

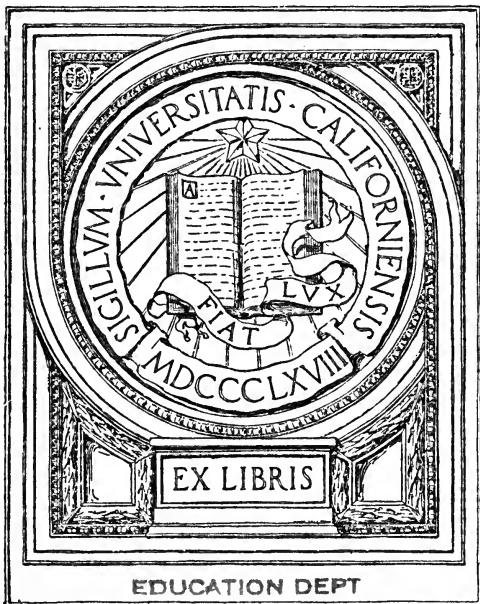
UC-NRLF



\$B 266 859

46 115

GIFT OF
Dr. Horace Ivie



849
A917
el

ELEMENTARY
GERMAN GRAMMAR

With Exercises

BY

CARL EDUARD AUE, PH.D.

FORMERLY GERMAN MASTER IN THE HIGH SCHOOL OF EDINBURGH



W. & R. CHAMBERS, LIMITED
LONDON AND EDINBURGH

1897

loben - praise
 lieben - love
 lernen - learn
 kaufen - buy
 sagen - say
 wohnen - live
 ren - run
 bauen - build

GERMAN SERIES.

EDITED BY DR AUE,

FORMERLY GERMAN MASTER IN THE HIGH SCHOOL, EDINBURGH.

	s.	d.
FIRST GERMAN READING BOOK.....	1	6
SECOND GERMAN READING BOOK.....	2	6
GERMAN GRAMMAR, ELEMENTARY, with additional Exercises.....	1	6
GERMAN GRAMMAR, ADVANCED.....	3	0
PHRASE-BOOK, ENGLISH-GERMAN.....	1	6
GERMAN SYNONYMS, DICTIONARY OF.....	1	6
GERMAN DICTIONARY—German and English, bound.....	4	0
German-English Part, ".....	2	6
English-German Part, ".....	2	6

W. & R. CHAMBERS, LIMITED, 47 PATERNOSTER ROW,
LONDON; AND 339 HIGH STREET, EDINBURGH.

EDUCATION DEPT

GIFT OF

Dr. Horace Ivis

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
I. ALPHABET.....	1
II. PRONUNCIATION AND ORTHOGRAPHY.....	2
III. ELEMENTS OF THE CONSTRUCTION OF SENTENCES	7
IV. VERB.....	11
V. THE AUXILIARY VERBS OF TENSE.....	14
VI. THE REGULAR CONJUGATIONS.....	22
VII. CLASSIFICATION OF THE STRONG VERBS.....	34
VIII. IRREGULAR CONJUGATION.....	45
IX. CONJUGATION OF THE PASSIVE VOICE.....	50
X. COMPOUND VERBS.....	52
XI. THE ARTICLE.....	56
XII. THE SUBSTANTIVE.....	57
XIII. THE GENDER OF SUBSTANTIVES.....	58
XIV. THE DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES.	66
XV. THE DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.....	84
XVI. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.....	90
XVII. PRONOUNS.....	94
XVIII. NUMERALS.....	108
XIX. ADVERBS.....	115
XX. PREPOSITIONS.....	121
XXI. CONJUNCTIONS.....	127
XXII. INTERJECTIONS.....	131
ADDITIONAL EXERCISES.....	132
ALPHABETICAL LIST OF STRONG AND IRREGULAR VERBS	153
ALPHABETICAL INDEX OF ENGLISH WORDS.....	160

NOTE ON THE CHANGED SPELLING OF CERTAIN GERMAN WORDS.

IN the present work the spelling of German is that which has long been the usual or standard system in German literature. This orthography was for the most part but little affected by the isolated efforts of scholars to secure the adoption of a simpler and more self-consistent spelling, a system more in accordance with phonetic principles, and with the historical development of the German tongue. Of late, however, a partial modification of the received spelling of a considerable number of words has rapidly gained ground in German literature, in accordance with rules sanctioned by the Prussian Minister of Public Instruction in 1880. The principal words modified by this system may be arranged under the following heads.

I. Instead of *th*, *t* only is spelt in these three groups of words :

In <i>Atem</i> , breath (not <i>Atthem</i>).	<i>Rat</i> , advice, and its derivatives
<i>Armuth</i> , poverty (not <i>Armuthh</i>).	and compounds (<i>raten</i> , advise ;
<i>Blüthe</i> , blossom.	<i>Heirat</i> , marriage ; <i>räthsel</i> , riddle ;
<i>Flut</i> , flood.	<i>verraten</i> , betray ; &c.).
<i>Glut</i> , glow.	<i>Roth</i> , red.
<i>Miete</i> , hire.	<i>Rute</i> , rod.
<i>Muth</i> , courage	<i>Wert</i> , worthy (<i>wertvoll</i> , &c.).
<i>Not</i> , distress.	<i>Wut</i> , rage.
<i>Vater</i> , godfather.	<i>Zierat</i> , ornament.

In *Tau*, cable ; *Teil*, part ; *Teer*, tar ; *Tier*, animal ; *teuer*, dear ;
— *verteidigen*, defend. Also in *Furt*, ford ; *Turm*, tower ; *Wirt*, inn-keeper.

In the termination *tum* ; as *Eigentum* (not *Eigenthum*), property ;
Altertum, antiquity ; *Irrtum*, error ; &c.

II. *Tot*, dead, and its derivatives are spelt without *h* ; *der Tote*, the dead man (not *der Tette*) ; *töten*, to kill ; *Totenbett*, deathbed.
(The noun *Tod*, death, and its derivatives, have *h* only.)

III. *Brot*, bread, instead of *Broth*.

IV. Instead of *ß*, *s* only is used in the termination *niß* ; as *Kenntniß*, knowledge ; *Zeugniß*, testimony. So in the prefix *niß* ; as *Misträuen*, mistrust.

V. *Star*, starling, and *Loth*, lot, instead of *Staar*, *Loos*.

VI. For *c*, *f* is spelt in such words as *Klasse*, class ; *Kongreß*, congress.

VII. For *c*, *z* is spelt in *Dezember*, *Koncil*, *Konzert*, *Offizier*, *Prinzipal*, &c.

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2007 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation

GERMAN HANDWRITING.

a b c d e f g h i j k l m
n o p q r s (s final) t u v
w x y z.

A L L S f f g f r
j d l m n o p q
r s t u v w x y z.

Modified Vowels: Ä ä Ö ö U u ü

Diphthongs: ai äu au ei oi

Double Consonants: ff (ch) gg (ph)
ss (th) ss (ss) ff (sch) k (tz)
ck (ck)

Vesillur

Götter

Vinck

Larkur

Grimm.

ELEMENTARY GERMAN GRAMMAR.

I.

ALPHABET.

§ 1. The German alphabet, as the English, consists of twenty-six letters ; namely :

GERMAN LETTERS.		ROMAN LETTERS.		NAMES.
A	a	A	a	ah.
B	b	B	b	bay.
C	c	C	c	tsay.
D	d	D	d	day.
E	e	E	e	aye.
F	f	F	f	eff.
G	g	G	g	gay.
H	h	H	h	hah.
I	i	I	i	ee.
J	j	J	j	yot.
K	k	K	k	kah.
L	l	L	l	ell.
M	m	M	m	em.
N	n	N	n	en.
O	o	O	o	oh.
P	p	P	p	pay.
Q	q	Q	q	koo.
R	r	R	r	err.
S	s	S	s	ess.
T	t	T	t	tay.
U	u	U	u	oo.
V	v	V	v	fow.
W	w	W	w	vay.
X	x	X	x	iks.
Y	y	Y	y	ypsilon.
Z	z	Z	z	tsot.

Note.

The *z* final is substituted for the so-called long *f* at the end of a syllable only—as in *tas*, *tes*, *les-bar*.

§ 2. Besides the simple letters of the alphabet, the following compound letters are employed:—

As substitutes for simple sounds—

ch	=	ch	tsay-hah ; the guttural ch.
ph	=	ph	pay-hah ; sounds like f.
sch	=	sch	ess-tsay-hah ; sounds like sh.
th	=	th	tay-hah ; sounds like t.

As substitutes for double consonants—

ck	=	ck	tsay-kah ; is used for double t.
sz	=	sz	ess-tset ; is used for double f.
tz	=	tz	tay-tset ; is used for double z.

II.

PRONUNCIATION AND ORTHOGRAPHY.

I. VOWELS.

§ 3. The pure vowels are a, e, i, o, u. They are pronounced as follows:—

a sounds like the pure Italian *a* in ‘father;’

e sounds like *a* in ‘gate,’ or *e* in ‘get;’

i sounds like *ee* in ‘feel,’ or *i* in ‘fill;’

o sounds like *o* in ‘shore,’ or *o* in ‘short;’

u sounds like *oo* in ‘fool,’ or *u* in ‘full.’

Every vowel has, according to circumstances, either a long or a short sound—that is, its pronunciation may occupy a longer or shorter portion of time.

EXAMPLES:—a long in *fam*, *bat* ; short in *Ramm*, *balb*.

e long in *reden*, *geben* ; short in *retten*, *gelten*.

i long in *mir*, *dir* ; short in *mit*, *stills*.

o long in *Ton*, *Strom* ; short in *Gott*, *Form*.

u long in *du*, *Hut* ; short in *dumm*, *Hund*.

§ 4. Three of the pure vowels—namely, a, o, u—admit of being softened or modified. The vowels so changed are termed *modified vowels*, and the change is marked by *e* put after the letter, when it is a capital, and by two little strokes above it, when it is a small letter. They are pronounced thus:—

Äe, ä sounds like *e* in ‘get,’ or like the French *ê* in ‘père’

Öe, ö sounds like the French *eu* in ‘peu,’ ‘feu.’

Ue, ü sounds like the French *u* in ‘du,’ ‘fus.’

The modified vowels are either long or short, but the nature of the sound of each remains the same under all circumstances.

EXAMPLES:—*ä* long in *fäme*, *Bär*; short in *Ränne*, *fällt*.

ö long in *Töne*, *Del*; short in *fönnen*, *Derter*.

ü long in *für*, *Hüte*; short in *Fürst*, *Hütte*.

Notes.

For the sounds of the modified *o* and *u*, there are no equivalents in English; but the student may acquire the correct pronunciation of *ö* by trying to pronounce *e* with contracted or rounded lips; and that of *ü* by trying to pronounce *i* in a similar manner.

§ 5. *Y* (ypsilon) is a foreign vowel, and sounds like the modified *u*, or the French *u* in 'du,' 'fus.'

EXAMPLES:—*y* long in *Polyp*, *Uyl*; short in *Myrte*, *Idylle*.

§ 6. A vowel is long when not followed by any consonant, or by one consonant only; it is short when followed by a double consonant, or by two consonants originally belonging to the same syllable.

EXAMPLES:—With a long vowel—*du*, *mir*, *Graf*, *Brod*, *Blut*, *Bäd=er*, *streb=en*, *lob=t*. With a short vowel—*Ball*, *Narr*, *fromm*, *Stoff*, *Kraft*, *falt*, *Gast*, *Hand*, *fremd*, *Gold*, *Bänd=er*, *sterb=en*, *find=en*.

Notes.

1. Some pronouns, prepositions, and other words incapable of inflection, form an exception to this rule; *e. g.*—*es*, *daß*, *daß*, *was*, *man*, *in*, *an*, *von*, *um*, *mit*, *bis*, *ab*, *ob*, *weg*. In like manner *bin*, (I) *am*, *hat*, (he) *has*. Unaccented syllables, as *be*, *ge*, *er*, *ver*, *ger*, *en*, *em*, *den*, &c., are also excepted.

2. The double consonants *ff* and *ch* at the end of a syllable, leave it uncertain whether the preceding vowel is long or short.

§ 7. In a great number of words, orthography employs particular signs to shew that a vowel is long.

1. Three of the pure vowels can be doubled—namely, *a*, *e*, and *o*.

EXAMPLES:—*Mal*, *Paar*, *Haar*, *Staat*; *leer*, *Meer*, *Veet*, *Klee*; *Moor*, *Loos*, *Boot*.

2. The vowel *i* is lengthened by *e* being put after it.

EXAMPLES:—*die*, *nie*, *tief*, *Bier*, *Brief*, *Lied*.

3. All vowels, whether pure or modified, are long when followed by *h*, provided the *h* belongs to the same syllable. The *h* in such cases is mute.

EXAMPLES :—*Bahn, lahm, mehr, lehren, ihm, Ohr, Rohl, Ruhm, Uhr, Röhne, Höhle, fühn.*

II. DIPHTHONGS.

§ 8. The German language has five diphthongs—namely, *ei, ai, au, äu*, the last being the modified *au*.

ei is pronounced like the English *i* in 'fine,' or *y* in 'my.'

ai has nearly the same sound as *ei*.

au is pronounced nearly as the English *ou* in 'thou.'

eu and *äu* are both pronounced like *oi* in 'point.'

All diphthongs are long.

EXAMPLES :—*mein, rein, fein, breit; Main, Rain, Hain; laut, braun, blau, Traum; neu, treu, Freude, heute; Träume, Bäume, Häuser, Häute.*

III. CONSONANTS.

§ 9. The *consonants are divided*, according to the organs by which they are articulated—the throat, tongue, and lips—into *gutturals, linguals, and labials*; and, according to the degree of their more or less perfect articulation, into *semi-consonants* or *spirants* (that is, breathing-sounds), *liquids*, and *mutes*. The mutes are subdivided, according to the lesser or greater intensity with which they are uttered, into *soft, hard, and aspirate*. This classification is exhibited in the following table :—

	GUTTURALS.	LINGUALS.	LABIALS.
1. SEMI-CONSONANTS,	j	f, ſch	w
2. LIQUIDS, . . .	r	l, n	m
3. MUTES—			
a. Soft, . . .	g	t	b
b. Hard, . . .	f (c), q	t (ß, z, c)	p
c. Aspirate, .	ch	wanting.	f, v (vb)

Notes

1. The spirant *b*, being formed by the mere breath, does not belong to any of the articulating organs in particular.

2. The letters *f* (c), *ff*, *ß*, *z*, *sch*, are also called *sibilants*, from the hissing nature of their sounds.

1. GUTTURALS.*

§ 10. **ſ** (yot) has the sound of the English *y* in 'yes.'

EXAMPLES :—ja, Jahr, je, jeder, Sommer, Jubel.

§ 11. **g** commonly sounds like the English *g* in 'give.' When it stands at the end of a word or syllable, and is preceded by *a*, *o*, *u*, or *au*, its sound approaches, but is not quite so strong, as that of *ch* in the Scotch word 'loch.' When at the end of a word or syllable, and preceded by *e*, *i*, *ä*, *ö*, *ü*, *ei*, *eu*, or *äu*, it sounds like *j* in *ja*, or *y* in 'yes.' It takes the latter sound also after *r* and *l*.

EXAMPLES :—gut, Gott, groß, Garten; Tag, bog, flug; Steg, Krieg, Teig, leug=nen, trüg=lich; Berg, Burg, arg, farg, Laßg.

When a word of this nature increases by inflection, so that *g* remains no longer the final letter, but becomes the first letter of the next syllable, its pronunciation inclines towards that of *g* in 'give,' but without entirely losing the peculiar sound of *ch* or *y* respectively.

EXAMPLES :—La=ge, Bo=gen, flu=ge; Ste=ge, Krie=geß, beu=gen; Ver=ge, Bur=gen, Tal=geß.

When at the end of a word, and preceded by *n*, *g* preserves its original sound of *g* in 'give,' but coalesces into one sound with *n* (as *ng* in 'long' or 'ring') when the word increases by inflection.

EXAMPLES :—lang, Ring, jung; länger, Ringe, jünger.

§ 12. The aspirate guttural **ch** has the two different sounds of *ch* in 'loch,' and of *y* in 'yes' (or rather a little stronger), under circumstances similar to those mentioned above with regard to the letter *g*; for it has the pronunciation of *ch*, when preceded by *a*, *o*, *u*, or *au*; and that of *y* (or somewhat stronger) when preceded by any of the other vowels or diphthongs, or by *r*, *l*, *n*.

EXAMPLES :—Dach, nach, machen, Nacht, doch, Loch, fochen, Tsch, Buch, auch, Brauch, Taucher; ich, recht, brechen, rächen, riechen, reich, gleich, euch, leuchten, Licht, nicht, nächstlich; durch, Furcht, fürchten, Dolch, Reich, manch.

* All consonants not adverted to in the following paragraphs are pronounced as in English.

When, in words of Greek extraction, *ch* occurs as initial before *a*, *o*, *u*, or a consonant, it is pronounced like *f*; but it has the soft sound resembling (though stronger than) that of *y* in 'yes' before *i* or *e*.

EXAMPLES:—*Charakter*, *Chor*, *Christ*; *Chemie*, *Chirurg*.

In words originally German, *ch* is pronounced like *f* only before *s* (*ß*), provided the *s* forms part of the stem. In words of this description, *x* is the equivalent in English of the German *chß*.

EXAMPLES:—*Ochß*, ox; *Fuchß*, fox; *Büchse*, a box; *sechß*, six; *Flachß*, flax; *Dachß*, badger; *Wachß*, wax; *wachsen*, to wax; *Wechsel*, change.

2. LINGUALS.

§ 13. The sound of *s* is soft, resembling that of the English *z* in 'zone,' 'zeal,' or *s* in 'desire,' 'bosom.'

EXAMPLES:—*Sohn*, *Sonne*, *sagen*, *Rose*, *Busen*, *reisen*.

§ 14. The *ß* and *ff* are pronounced like *ss* in English. The *ff* is used only after a short vowel, *ß* after a long vowel or a diphthong. At the end of a word, however, orthography forbids the use of *ff*, even though a short vowel precede.

EXAMPLES:—Short vowels in *essen*, *lassen*, *müssen*; long in *reissen*, *grüßen*, *fließen*, *Meiße*. Long in *Gruß*, *Maß*, *ließ*; short in *daß*, *jaß*, *muß*, *fluß*, *fluß*.

§ 15. *Sch* is pronounced like *sh* in English.

EXAMPLES:—*rasch*, *frisch*, *Fisch*, *schön*, *Schaf*, *Schiff*, *englisch*, *Schlitten*, *schmelzen*, *schreiben*, *Schwan*.

§ 16. *z* is always pronounced as in English, except before *i* with another vowel after it, in which position it sounds like the German *z*.

EXAMPLES:—*Nation*, *Patient*, *Portion*.

th is pronounced like *t*, there being no sound in German like the English *th*. The vowel preceding *th* is long.

EXAMPLES:—*roth*, *Rath*, *Muth*, *Noth*, *Loth*.

§ 17. *ß* is a simple sign for a mixed sound—namely, *tß*; accordingly, its sound is much harder than that of the English *z*. After a short vowel, *ß* is made the substitute for a double *z*.

EXAMPLES :—zu, zehn, Zahl, zahm, Zeit, Holz, Herz, Weiz ;
Sag, Plag, Bliß, sitzen, Klage, schwagen.

§ 18. *z* is pronounced like *f* before *a*, *o*, *u*, *au*, and before a consonant ; but like *z* or English *ts* before *e*, *i*, *ä*, *ö*, *ü*, *y*. Its use is limited to words of foreign origin, whilst, in words originally German, its place is now supplied by *f* and *z*.

EXAMPLES :—Candidat, Conſistorium, Claudius, Acten ;
Centrum, Cicero, Cäſar, Cylinder.

§ 19. *x* is pronounced like *fs*, of which two consonants it is composed.

EXAMPLES :—Art, Text, Here.

3. LABIALS.

§ 20. *W* sounds nearly like the English *v*, slightly inclining towards *w*.

EXAMPLES :—Wein, wo, wann, wie, Wind, will, wahr, Wolke, Wolf, Wort, Waſſer.

§ 21. *B* is pronounced like *f* in all originally German words, whilst in all words borrowed from the Latin or French languages, it has the sound of the English *v* or the German *w*.

EXAMPLES :—Like *f* in Vater, von, voll, Volf, Vogel, viel ; like *w* in Venus, Abvocat, dividiren, November, Livree.

III.

ELEMENTS OF THE CONSTRUCTION OF SENTENCES.

I. THE DIRECT PRINCIPAL SENTENCE.

§ 22. Every expression of a thought by words is called a *sentence*. The essential members of every sentence are the *Subject*—that is, the person or thing of which something is said or asserted ; and the *Predicate*—that is, that which is said or asserted regarding the subject (from the Latin word *praedicare*, to proclaim, to assert).

§ 23. When the predicate is an adjective, or a substantive, or an adverbial expression, the assertion is made by some form of the verb *ſein*, to be, which joins the predicate to the subject.

EXAMPLES.

SUBJECT.	ASSERTION.	PREDICATE.
Der Fluß	ist	tief,
the river	is	deep.
Der Mann	war	ein Maler,
the man	was	a painter.
Der Sommer	ist	hin,
the summer	is	gone.
Ich	bin	ohne Furcht,
I	am	without fear

§ 24. When the predicate is a verb, the assertion is contained in the predicate itself. Examples:—

SUBJECT.	ASSERTION—PREDICATE.
Der Vogel	singt,
the bird	sings.
Die Blume	blühte,
the flower	bloomed.
Du	schläfst,
thou	sleepest.

§ 25. When the verb is used in a compound form—that is, when an auxiliary verb is needed to indicate some relation of time or mood of the predicate—the *assertion* is contained in the auxiliary verb; and in the case of there being two or three auxiliary verbs, the *assertion* is contained in that auxiliary which agrees with the subject in person and number. In such cases, the participle and the infinitive of the verb are removed to the end of the sentence. Examples:—

SUBJECT.	ASSERTION.	PREDICATE.
Die Blume	wird	blühen,
the flower	will	bloom.
Die Blume	hat	geblüht,
the flower	has	bloomed.
Die Blume	würde	geblüht haben,
the flower	would	bloomed have.
Der Vogel	kann	singen,
the bird	can	sing.
Der Fluß	muß	tief sein,
the river	must	deep be.
Er	ist	ein Maler gewesen,
he	has	a painter been.

§ 26. When the predicate is qualified by one or more *objects*, or by one or more *adverbial expressions*, they generally follow the word containing the assertion. When the verb stands in a compound form, they come in between the assertion and the participle or the infinitive. Examples :—

SUBJECT.	ASSERTION.	ADV. EXPRESSION—OBJECT.	PREDICATE.
Wir we	lesen read	ein Buch, a book.	
Der Vogel the bird	singt sings	schön, beautifully.	
Ich I	schrieb wrote	heute einen Brief, to-day a letter.	
Wir we	werden shall	ein Buch a book	lesen, read.
Der Vogel the bird	hat has	schön beautifully	gesungen, sung.
Ich I	würde should	heute einen Brief to-day a letter	geschrieben haben, written have.
Er he	ist is	seinem Bruder (to) his brother	ähnlich, like.
Sie she	wird will	ihrer Versprechens of her promise	eingedenk sein, mindful be.

§ 27. The *negative nicht*, like all adverbs, follows the *assertion*. When there are objects or adverbial expressions in the sentence, the negative is generally placed after them ; as—

SUBJECT.	ASSERTION.	OBJECT—ADV. EXPRESSION.	NEGATIVE.	PREDICATE.
Das Buch the book	ist is		nicht not	leicht, easy.
Der Vogel the bird	singt sings		nicht, not.	
Der Vogel the bird	kann can		nicht not	singen, sing.
Ich I	sehe see	das Buch the book	nicht, not.	
Wir we	haben have	den Brief the letter	nicht not	erhalten, received
Ich I	habe have	ihn seit einer Woche him for a week	nicht not	gesehen, seen.

Note.

The above rule concerning the position of *nicht* is abandoned when, in a negative assertion, a particular member of the sentence is to be made emphatic by contrast; in this case, *nicht* precedes the emphatic word.

II. THE INVERTED PRINCIPAL SENTENCE.

§ 28. Under certain circumstances, the natural or direct order of a sentence must be inverted, so that the subject and the assertion change places with each other. A construction of this kind is called an *inverted principal sentence*. The inversion takes place especially—

1. In direct interrogative sentences—that is, in sentences containing a direct question by the speaker :

Ist die Rose roth?—Singt der Vogel?

Is the rose red?—Does the bird sing?

Wird der Vogel singen?

Will the bird sing?

2. In imperative sentences—that is, in sentences containing a direct command by the speaker :

Seien Sie ohne Furcht,

be (you) without fear.

3. When, for the sake of emphasis, the predicate, an object, an adverbial expression, or a dependent clause, is placed before the subject and verb :

Kurz ist das Leben,

short is life.

Den Brief haben wir erhalten,

the letter have we received.

Heute haben wir den Brief erhalten,

to-day have we the letter received.

Was der Brief enthält, hat sie mir nicht verhehlt,
what the letter contains, has she (from) me not concealed.

III. THE DEPENDENT SENTENCE.

§ 29. When two or more clauses are joined together, they are either co-ordinate, or the one is subordinate to the other. If they are co-ordinate, the above rules are followed in the

construction of each clause. If one is subordinate, the arrangement of the *principal* clause is the same as usual—that is, either direct or inverted—whilst in the *dependent* clause, the word containing the assertion is removed to the end. Dependent clauses are generally known from the subordinative conjunctions (§ 158) or relative pronouns, by which they are connected with the principal clause. Examples:—

1. Co-ordinate sentences :

Einige Rosen sind roth, andere sind weiß, some roses are red, others are white.

Wir sehen mit den Augen, und wir hören mit den Ohren, we see with our eyes, and we hear with our ears.

Ich will nach Deutschland reisen, deshalb lerne ich Deutsch, I intend to go to Germany, therefore I am learning German.

Es muß geregnet haben, denn die Flüsse sind angeschwollen, it must have rained, for the rivers are swollen.

2. Principal and dependent clauses :

Er weiß, daß sein Leben auf dem Spiele steht, he knows that his life is at stake.

Ich würde gekommen sein, wenn ich Zeit gehabt hätte, I should have come if I had had time.

Wir wissen Alles, was geschehen ist, we know all that has happened.

Der Vogel, welchen ich gekauft habe, singt nicht, the bird which I have bought does not sing.

IV.

V E R B.

§ 30. A verb expresses that a person or thing (the subject) is in a certain condition, or that he or it performs an action, or is acted upon.

A verb denoting an action which requires an object to complete its idea, and has the object suffering the action in the accusative case, is called a *transitive verb*; as—ich schlage (den Hund), I strike (the dog); ich pflanze (einen Baum), I plant (a tree).

A verb denoting a mere state or condition, or an action which does not admit of any bearing upon an object, is called an *intransitive verb*; as—ich *schlafe*, I sleep; ich *sitze*, I sit; ich *gehe*, I walk; ich *laufe*, I run; ich *komme*, I come. The latter term comprises also those verbs of action which, while they require an object to complete their idea, yet do not govern the accusative case; as—ich *gedenke* (*seiner*), I think (of him); ich *helfe* (*den Armen*), I help (the poor, or, literally, to the poor).

§ 31. The usual form of the verb, when the subject is represented as the person or thing being in a state or performing an action, is called the *active form* or *voice*; as—ich *schlafe*, I sleep; *der Knabe schlägt den Hund*, the boy strikes the dog; *der Gärtner pflanzt einen Baum*, the gardener plants a tree.

But if the object in which the action terminates (as—the dog, a tree) is represented as the subject in a state of suffering the action, the particular form which the verb then assumes is called the *passive form* or *voice*; as—*der Hund wird von dem Knaben geschlagen*, the dog is being beaten by the boy; *ein Baum wurde von dem Gärtner gepflanzt*, a tree was being planted by the gardener.

§ 32. When the active subject of a verb is at the same time the suffering object, the verb is said to be in the *reflective form*. For example:—ich *wasche mich*, I wash myself; er *hat sich geschnitten*, he has cut himself.

§ 33. When an action is conceived without a definite subject from which it proceeds, the verb is called an *impersonal*. Impersonal verbs are used only in the third person singular, and the place of the subject is supplied by the neuter personal pronoun *es*, it. For example:—*es regnet*, it rains; *es donnert*, it thunders.

§ 34. Every verb has four *Moods*, to point out the particular manner in which a state or action is asserted of the subject:—

1. The *Indicative* represents a state or action as a fact; as—er *singt*, he sings.

2. The *Conjunctive* (or Subjunctive) represents a state or action only as possible, especially as an assertion of another

person, or as a wish ; *e. g.*—*ſie ſagt, daß er ſinge*, she says that he sings ; *ich wünſche, daß er ſinge*, I wish that he may sing.

3. The *Conditional* represents a state or action merely as an assumed fact ; as—*wenn er ſänge*, if he sang.

4. The *Imperative* represents a state or action as a command ; as—*ſinge*, sing.

§ 35. The relation of time of an asserted state or action is indicated by the *Tenses* of the verb. Every verb has six tenses ; namely—

1. The *Present*—*ich ſinge*, I sing, I am singing.

2. The *Imperfect*—*ich ſang*, I sang, I was singing.

3. The *Perfect*—*ich habe geſungen*, I have sung, I have been singing.

4. The *Pluperfect*—*ich hatte geſungen*, I had sung, I had been singing.

5. The *Future*—*ich werde ſingen*, I shall sing.

6. The *Future-Perfect*—*ich werde geſungen haben*, I shall have sung.

Two tenses in the active voice—namely, the present and imperfect—are formed without the help of auxiliary verbs, and are on that account called *simple* tenses. The other four tenses of the active, and all the tenses of the passive voice, are formed by means of auxiliary verbs—the *auxiliary verbs of tense*—and are called *compound* tenses.

§ 36. Under the name of *Verbals* are comprised the *infinitive* and *participle*. The infinitive expresses a state or action in a substantive form, the participle expresses a state or action in an adjective form ; the former, therefore, is a *verbal substantive*, the latter a *verbal adjective*. Each has one form for the present and another for the past, but none for the future ; as—*ſingen*, to sing ; *geſungen haben*, to have sung ; *ſingend*, singing ; *geſungen*, sung.

§ 37. The infinitive with the preposition *zu*, *to*, before it, is called the *supine* ; as—*zu ſingen*, to sing, or in order to sing ; *geſungen zu haben*, to have sung.

THE AUXILIARY VERBS OF TENSE.

§ 38. Haben, TO HAVE.

INDICATIVE

Sing. ich habe, I have,
 du hast, thou hast,
 er } he }
 sie } hat, she } has.
 es } it }
Plur. wir haben, we have,
 ihr habt, you have,
 sie haben, they have.

CONJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

ich habe, I may have,
 du habest, thou mayst have,
 er } he }
 sie } habe, she } may have.
 es } it }
 wir haben, we may have,
 ihr habet, you may have,
 sie haben, they may have.

CONDITIONAL.

ich hätte, (if) I had,
 du hättest, thou hadst,
 er } he }
 sie } hätte, she } had.
 es } it }
 wir hätten, we had,
 ihr hättet, you had,
 sie hätten, they had.

IMPERFECT.

Sing. ich hatte, I had,
 du hättest, thou hadst,
 er hatte, he had.

Plur. wir hatten, we had,
 ihr hättet, you had,
 sie hatten, they had.

See

Seite, I might have

PERFECT.

ich habe
 du habest
 er habe
 wir haben
 ihr habet
 sie haben

I may
 thou mayst
 he may
 we may
 you may
 they may.

ich hätte
 du hättest
 er hätte
 wir hätten
 ihr hättet
 sie hätten

(if) I had
 thou hadst
 he had
 we had
 you had
 they had.

had

Sing. ich habe gehabt, I have had,
 du hast gehabt, thou hast had,
 er hat gehabt, he has had.

Plur. wir haben gehabt, we have had,
 ihr habt gehabt, you have had,
 sie haben gehabt, they have had.

4 *Sing.* ich hatte gehabt, I had had.
 du hättest gehabt, thou hadst had,
 er hatte gehabt, he had had.
P'ur. wir hätten gehabt, we had had,
 ihr hättet gehabt, you had had.
 sie hätten gehabt, they had had.

5 *Sing.* ich werde haben, I shall have,
 du wirst haben, thou wilt have,
 er wird haben, he will have.
Plur. wir werden haben, we shall have,
 ihr werdet haben, you will have,
 sie werden haben, they will have.

6 *Sing.* ich werde gehabt haben,
 I shall have had.
Plur. wir werden gehabt haben,
 we shall have had.

IMPERATIVE.

Take! Now. *Sing.* habe, have (thou),
 habe er, let him have.
P'ur. haben wir, let us have,
 habt, have (you),
 haben sie, let them have.

haben Sie! Polit.
address

FUTURE.

ich werde I shall
 du werdest thou wilt
 er werde he will
 wir werden we shall
 ihr werdet you will
 sie werden they will

FUTURE-PERFECT.

ich werde gehabt haben,
 I shall have had.
 wir werden gehabt haben,
 we shall have had.

(Conjugated like the Future.)

INFINITIVES.

PRESENT. haben, to have,
 PAST. gehabt haben, to have had.

SUPINES.

PRESENT zu haben, to have,
 PAST. gehabt zu haben, to have had.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT. habend, having.—PAST. gehabt, had.

7 *ich würde I should*
du würdest thou wouldst
er würde he would
wir würden we should
ihr würdet you would
sie würden they would

8

ich würde gehabt haben,
 I should have had.
 wir würden gehabt haben,
 we should have had.

EXERCISE I.

I have a book.¹ We have a horse.² They have a house.³
 Hast thou a knife?⁴ He has a fork.⁵ Have you⁶ a spoon?⁷
 I had no money.⁸ She had no time.⁹ We had no paper.¹⁰
 Have they had¹¹ money? I shall have a horse. Who¹²
 has had my pen?¹³ He had had no time. Will you have
 time? I should have no patience.¹⁴ Have patience. I
 should call¹⁵ upon you, if¹⁶ I had¹⁷ time. We should have
 called¹⁸ upon you, if we had had¹⁹ time. I should take a
 drive,²⁰ if I had a carriage.²¹

¹ A book, ein Buch. Every substantive is written with a capital.
² A horse, ein Pferd. ³ A house, ein Haus. ⁴ A knife, ein Messer.
⁵ A fork, eine Gabel. ⁶ Use the third person plural for 'you,' wherever
 it occurs, and write the addressing pronouns, Sie, you, Ihnen, to you, Ihr,
 your, &c., with a capital. ⁷ A spoon (acc.), einen Löffel. ⁸ No money,
 kein Geld. ⁹ No time, keine Zeit. ¹⁰ No paper, kein Papier. ¹¹ Regarding
 the arrangement of the words, see §§ 25-26. ¹² Who, wer. ¹³ My pen,
 mein Feder. ¹⁴ No patience, keine Geduld. ¹⁵ I should call upon you, ich
 würde Sie besuchen. ¹⁶ If, wenn; begins a dependent clause. Regarding
 the construction, see § 29. ¹⁷ Use the present conditional. ¹⁸ We should
 have called upon you, wir würden Sie besucht haben. ¹⁹ Use the perfect
 conditional. ²⁰ I should take a drive, ich würde spazieren fahren. ²¹ A
 carriage (acc.), einen Wagen.

* Before commencing the translation of the exercises, the student should
 make himself acquainted with the leading rules for the construction of sentences,
 contained in section III., §§ 22-29.

Words given in *Italics* are not to be translated; as—'a glass of beer.' This
 mark [] signifies that words, although not required in English, must be
 expressed in German. Sometimes words so inserted are merely of an explana-
 tory kind; as—'I have given [to] him the key;' or 'a church is [being] built.'

The following abbreviations are employed in the notes to the exercises:—

<i>m.</i>	means 'masculine gender.'	<i>dat.</i>	means 'dative.'
<i>f.</i>	" 'feminine gender.'	<i>acc.</i>	" 'accusative.'
<i>n.</i>	" 'neuter gender.'	<i>sing.</i>	" 'singular.'
<i>nom</i>	" 'nominative.'	<i>pl. or plur.</i>	" 'plural.'
<i>gen</i>	" 'genitive.'		

§ 39. *Sein*, TO BE.

INDICATIVE.

Sing. *ich bin*, I am,
du bist, thou art,
er ist, he is.

Plur. *wir sind*, we are,
ihr seid, you are,
sie sind, they are.

Sing. *ich war*, I was,
du warst, thou wast,
er war, he was.

Plur. *wir waren*, we were,
ihr waret, you were,
sie waren, they were.

Sing. *ich bin gewesen*, I have been,
du bist gewesen, thou hast been,
er ist gewesen, he has been.

Plur. *wir sind gewesen*, we have been,
ihr seid gewesen, you have been,
sie sind gewesen. they have been.

CONJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

ich sei, I may be,
du seiest, thou mayst be,
er sei, he may be.

wir seien, we may be,
ihr seiet, you may be,
sie seien, they may be.

IMPERFECT.

CONDITIONAL

ich wäre, (if) I were,
du wärest, thou wert,
er wäre, he were.

wir wären, we were,
ihr wäret, you were,
sie wären, they were.

PERFECT.

ich sei
du seiest
er sei
wir seien
ihr seiet
sie seien

gewesen,
I may have
been.

ich wäre
du wärest
er wäre
wir wären
ihr wäret
sie wären

gewesen,
(if) I had been.

Sing. ich war gewesen, I had been,
 du warst gewesen, thou hadst been,
 er war gewesen, he had been.
Plur. wir waren gewesen, we had been,
 ihr wart gewesen, you had been,
 sie waren gewesen, they had been.

Sing. ich werde sein, I shall be,
 du wirst sein, thou wilt be,
 er wird sein, he will be.

Plur. wir werden sein, we shall be,
 ihr werdet sein, you will be,
 sie werden sein, they will be.

Sing. ich werde gewesen sein,
 I shall have been.

IMPERATIVE.

Sing. sei, be (thou),
 sei er, let him be.

Plur. seien wir, let us be,
 seid, be (you),
 seien sie, let them be.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT. seiend, being.—PAST. gewesen, been.

FUTURE.

ich werde
 du werdest
 er werde
 wir werden
 ihr werdet
 sie werden

ich soll
 du sollst
 er soll
 wir sollen
 ihr werdet
 sie werden

ich würde
 du würdest
 er würde
 wir würden
 ihr würdet
 sie würden

ich sollte
 du solltest
 er sollte
 wir sollten
 ihr würdet
 sie würden

FUTURE-PERFECT.

ich werde gewesen sein,
 I shall have been.

(Conjugated like the Future.)

ich würde gewesen sein,
 I should have been.

INFINITIVES.

PRESENT. sein, to be.

PAST. gewesen sein, to have been.

SUPINES.

PRESENT. zu sein, to be.

PAST. gewesen zu sein, to have been.

EXERCISE II.

The river¹ is deep.² The mountains³ are high.⁴ Where⁵ is my hat?⁶ I am not⁷ well.⁸ My brother⁹ was unwell.¹⁰ Are you well? We are happy.¹¹ Where are you? Where art thou? Where have you been? Where hast thou been? I have been at school.¹² We were in the country.¹³ They had been in town.¹⁴ I shall be here.¹⁵ Will you be here? Has he been there?¹⁶ We have been in¹⁷ Germany.¹⁸ My father¹⁹ has been in France.²⁰ When²¹ will you be at home?²² Be quiet.²³ I should not be at home, if the weather²⁴ were good.²⁵ My sister²⁶ would have been at school, if she had not been ill.²⁷

¹ The river, der Fluß. ² Deep, tief. ³ The mountains, die Berge. ⁴ High, hoch. ⁵ Where, wo. ⁶ My hat, mein Hut. ⁷ Not, nicht. ⁸ Well, wohl. ⁹ My brother, mein Bruder. ¹⁰ Unwell, unwohl. ¹¹ Happy, glücklich. ¹² At school, in der Schule. ¹³ In the country, auf dem Lande. ¹⁴ In town, in der Stadt. ¹⁵ Here, hier. ¹⁶ There, da. ¹⁷ In, in. ¹⁸ Germany, Deutschland. ¹⁹ My father, mein Vater. ²⁰ France, Frankreich. ²¹ When? wann? ²² At home, zu Hause. ²³ Quiet, still. ²⁴ The weather, das Wetter. ²⁵ Good, gut. ²⁶ My sister, meine Schwester. ²⁷ Ill, krank.

§ 40. Werden, TO BECOME.

INDICATIVE.

Sing. ich werde, I become,
 du wirst, thou becomest,
 er wird, he becomes.
Plur. wir werden, we become,
 ihr werdet, you become,
 sie werden, they become.

Sing. ich wurde (or ward), I became,
 du wurdest (or wardest), thou becamest,
 er wurde (or ward), he became.
Plur. wir wurden, we became,
 ihr wurdet, you became,
 sie wurden, they became.

CONJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

ich werde, I may become,
 du werdest, thou mayst become,
 er werde, he may become.
 wir werden, we may become,
 ihr werdet, you may become,
 sie werden, they may become.

IMPERFECT.

PERFECT.

ich sei
 du seiest
 er sei
 wir seien
 ihr seiet
 sie seien

geworden,
 I may have
 become.

CONDITIONAL.

ich würde, (if) I became,
 du würdest, thou becamest,
 er würde, he became.
 wir würden, we became,
 ihr würdet, you became,
 sie würden, they became.

ich wäre
 du wärest
 er wäre
 wir wären
 ihr wäret
 sie wären

geworden,
 (if) I had
 become.

PLUPERFECT.

Sing. ich war
du warst
er war
Plur. wir waren
ihr waret
sie waren

I had become,
geworden,

Sing. ich werde
du wirst
er wird
Plur. wir werden
ihr werdet
sie werden

I shall become,
werden,

Sing. ich werde geworden sein,
I shall have become.

IMPERATIVE.

Sing. werde, become (thou),
werde er, let him become.
Plur. werden wir, let us become,
werdet, become (you),
werden sie, let them become.

PRESENT. werden, becoming.—PAST. geworden, become.

FUTURE.

ich werde
du werdest
er werde
wir werden
ihr werdet
sie werden

I shall become,
werden,

FUTURE-PERFECT.

ich werde geworden sein,
I shall have become.

(Conjugated like the Future.)

INFINITIVES

PRESENT. werden, to become.

PAST. geworden sein, to have become.

SUPINES.

PRESENT. zu werden, to become.

PAST. geworden zu sein, to have become.

PARTICIPLES.

ich würde
du würdest
er würde
wir würden
ihr würdet
sie würden

I should become,
würden,

ich würde geworden sein,
I should have become.

EXERCISE III



The tree¹ becomes green.² The man³ became rich.⁴ I grow⁵ tired.⁶ I became impatient.⁷ The air⁸ has become cold.⁹ The water¹⁰ becomes warm.¹¹ The weather has become fine.¹² They had become enemies.¹³ We have become friends.¹⁴ The apples¹⁵ will soon¹⁶ become ripe.¹⁷ Will the grapes¹⁸ become ripe? The knife¹⁹ will become blunt.²⁰ The child²¹ had become ill. The girl²² had grown very²³ tall.²⁴ Thou wilt become poor.²⁵ Doest thou become (say, becomest thou) impatient? The grapes would become ripe, if the weather were warm. I should have become his friend,²⁶ if I had become acquainted with him.²⁷ That²⁸ he may become rich. The woman²⁹ says³⁰ that she has become³¹ poor.

¹ The tree, der Baum. ² Green, grün. ³ The man, der Mann. ⁴ Rich, reich. ⁵ To grow, werden. ⁶ Tired, müde. ⁷ Impatient, ungeduldig. ⁸ The air, die Luft. ⁹ Cold, kalt. ¹⁰ The water, das Wasser. ¹¹ Warm, warm. ¹² Fine, schön. ¹³ Enemies, Feinde. ¹⁴ Friends, Freunde. ¹⁵ The apples, die Äpfel. ¹⁶ Soon, bald. ¹⁷ Ripe, reif. ¹⁸ The grapes, die Weintrauben. ¹⁹ The knife, das Messer. ²⁰ Blunt, stumpf. ²¹ The child, das Kind. ²² The girl, das Mädchen. ²³ Very, sehr. ²⁴ Tall, groß. ²⁵ Poor, arm. ²⁶ His friend, sein Freund. ²⁷ Acquainted with him, mit ihm bekannt. ²⁸ That, daß; begins a dependent clause. ²⁹ The woman, die Frau. ³⁰ Says, sagt. ³¹ Use the perfect conjunctive.

VL

THE REGULAR CONJUGATIONS.

§ 41. There are two regular conjugations, the *strong* and the *weak*; and all verbs, with a few exceptions, follow either the one or the other. These conjugations differ in the following particulars:—

1. The strong conjugation is distinguished by a change of the radical vowel in the imperfect and past participle; the weak, by an entire unchangeableness of the root. For example:

	INFINITIVE.	IMPERFECT.	PAST PARTICIPLE.
<i>Strong.</i> —	singen, to sing.	sang, sang.	gesungen, sung.
	sprechen, to speak.	sprach, spoke.	gesprochen, spoken.

INFINITIVE.	IMPERFECT.	PAST PARTICIPLE.
<i>Weak.</i> —loben, to praise.	lobte, praised.	gelobt, praised.

2. The imperfect tense in the strong conjugation takes no termination in the first and third persons singular; in the weak it takes *te* or *ete* (English *ed*); as—*ich* or *er* sang, I or he sang; *ich* or *er* sprach, I or he spoke; but *ich* or *er* lobte, I or he praised; *ich* or *er* leitete, I or he guided.

3. The past participle in the strong conjugation takes the termination *en* (English *en*); in the weak, *t* or *et* (English *ed*); as—*gesungen*, sung; *gesprochen*, spoken; but *gelobt*, praised; *geleitet*, guided.

4. The conditional of the present in the strong conjugation is formed from the imperfect by adding *t* and modifying the radical vowel, if it be capable of modification; in the weak conjugation, it is the very same as the imperfect. For example:—

Strong.—(wenn) *ich* fänge, (if) I sang, from *ich* sang, I sang.
 (wenn) *ich* böte, (if) I offered, from *ich* bot, I offered.
 (wenn) *ich* schüge, (if) I struck, from *ich* schlug, I struck.

Weak.—(wenn) *ich* lobte, (if) I praised, the same as *ich* lobte, I praised.

Notes.

The English language presents only one analogy to the formation of the conditional of strong verbs—namely, ‘I were’ (*ich wäre*), formed from the imperfect ‘I was’ (*ich war*).

5. In the second and third persons singular of the present indicative in the strong conjugation, the radical vowel *e* is changed into *i* or *ie*, *a* into *ä*, *o* into *ö*, *au* into *äu*, while there is no change in the weak. For example:—

Strong.—*ich* spreche, I speak, *du* sprichst, *er* spricht.
ich trage, I carry, *du* trägst, *er* trägt.
ich stoße, I push, *du* stößest, *er* stößt.
ich laufe, I run, *du* läufst, *er* läuft.

Weak.—*ich* lebe, I live, *du* lebst, *er* lebt.
ich male, I paint, *du* malst, *er* malt.
ich lobe, I praise, *du* lobst, *er* lobt.
ich kaufe, I buy, *du* kaufst, *er* kauft.

The change of *e* into *i* or *ie* takes place also in the second person singular of the imperative in all those verbs of the strong conjugation, in which the same change is made in the present indicative. In such cases, the termination *e*, peculiar to the second person singular of the imperative, is dropped; *e. g.*—[*sprich*], speak; [*befiehl*], command.

§ 42. The following table presents a view of the terminations of the simple tenses and verbals of both conjugations:—

PRESENT TENSE.

INDICATIVE, CONJUNCTIVE,
└──────────────────┘
 In both Conjugations.

<i>Singular</i> , 1. <i>e</i> , 2. <i>est</i> , <i>ist</i> , 3. <i>et</i> , <i>t</i> . <i>Plural</i> , 1. <i>en</i> , <i>n</i> , 2. <i>et</i> , <i>t</i> , 3. <i>en</i> , <i>n</i> .	<i>Singular</i> , 1. <i>e</i> , 2. <i>est</i> , 3. <i>e</i> . <i>Plural</i> , 1. <i>en</i> , 2. <i>et</i> , 3. <i>en</i> .
---	---

CONDITIONAL.

Strong Conjugation.	Weak Conjugation.
<i>Singular</i> , 1. <i>e</i> , 2. <i>est</i> , 3. <i>e</i> . <i>Plural</i> , 1. <i>en</i> , 2. <i>et</i> , 3. <i>en</i> .	<i>Singular</i> , 1. <i>ete</i> , <i>te</i> , 2. <i>etest</i> , <i>test</i> , 3. <i>ete</i> , <i>te</i> . <i>Plural</i> , 1. <i>eten</i> , <i>ten</i> , 2. <i>etet</i> , <i>tet</i> , 3. <i>eten</i> , <i>ten</i> .

IMPERFECT TENSE.

Strong Conjugation.	Weak Conjugation.
<i>Singular</i> , 1. — 2. <i>est</i> , <i>ist</i> , 3. — <i>Plural</i> , 1. <i>en</i> , 2. <i>et</i> , <i>t</i> , 3. <i>en</i> .	<i>Singular</i> , 1. <i>ete</i> , <i>te</i> , 2. <i>etest</i> , <i>test</i> , 3. <i>ete</i> , <i>te</i> . <i>Plural</i> , 1. <i>eten</i> , <i>ten</i> , 2. <i>etet</i> , <i>tet</i> , 3. <i>eten</i> , <i>ten</i> .

IMPERATIVE,

In both Conjugations.

<i>Singular</i> , — 2. <i>e</i> , 3. <i>e</i> .	<i>Plural</i> , 1. <i>en</i> , <i>n</i> , 2. <i>et</i> , <i>t</i> , 3. <i>en</i> , <i>n</i> .
---	---

INFINITIVE,
In both Conjugations.
en, n.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT, In both Conjugations.	PAST. Strong.	Weak.
end, nd.	en,	et, t.

Note.

The syllable *ge* prefixed to the radical syllable in the past participle of most verbs of both conjugations, is called the *augment*. It is dispensed with, however—1. In all verbs having an unaccented prefix: as—*erfinden*. invented, from *erfinden*, to invent; *verkauft*, sold, from *verkaufen*, to sell (see § 61). 2. In all verbs ending in *iren*; as—*studirt* studied, from *studiren*, to study; *buchstabirt*, spelt, from *buchstabiren*, to spell.

§ 43. SPECIMEN OF THE STRONG CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE.

Sing. ich ſinge, I ſing, or am ſinging,
 du ſing(e)ſt, * thou ſingeſt,
 er ſing(e)t, he ſings.
Plur. wir ſingen, we ſing,
 ihr ſing(e)t, you ſing,
 ſie ſingen, they ſing.

CONJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

ich ſinge, I may ſing,
 du ſingeſt, thou mayſt ſing,
 er ſinge, he may ſing.
 wir ſingen, we may ſing,
 ihr ſinget, you may ſing,
 ſie ſingen, they may ſing.

CONDITIONAL.

ich ſänge, (if) I ſang, *I ſhould ſing*
 du ſängeſt, thou ſangeſt,
 er ſänge, he ſang.
 wir ſängen, we ſang,
 ihr ſänget, you ſang,
 ſie ſängen, they ſang.

IMPERFECT.

Sing. ich ſang, I ſang, or was ſinging,
 du ſang(e)ſt, thou ſangeſt,
 er ſang, he ſang.
Plur. wir ſangen, we ſang,
 ihr ſang(e)t, you ſang,
 ſie ſangen, they ſang.

*I ſing, I might, could,
 I ſing, I would, I ſhould
 ſing.*

PERFECT.

Sing. ich habe
 du haſt
 er hat
Plur. wir haben
 ihr habt
 ſie haben

ich habe
 du haſeſt
 er habe
 wir haben
 ihr habet
 ſie haben

ich hätte
 du hätteſt
 er hätte
 wir hätten
 ihr hättet
 ſie hätten

(if) I had ſung.
 geſungen,

PLUPERFECT.

4 *Sing.* ich hatte
 du hattest
 er hatte
Plur. wir hatten
 ihr hattet
 sie hatten

gelingen, I had sung, or
 been singing.

5 *Sing.* ich werde
 du wirst
 er wird
Plur. wir werden
 ihr werdet
 sie werden

I shall sing.

FUTURE.

ich werde
 du werdest
 er werde
 wir werden
 ihr werdet
 sie werden

I shall sing.

FUTURE-PERFECT.

ich werde gesungen haben,
 I shall have sung.

7
 ich würde
 du würdest
 er würde
 wir würden
 ihr würdet
 sie würden

I should sing.

8
 ich würde gesungen haben,
 I should have sung.

INFINITIVES.

PRESENT. singen, to sing.
 PAST. gesungen haben, to have sung.

SUPINES.

PRESENT. zu singen, to sing.
 PAST. gesungen zu haben, to have sung.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT. singend, singing. — PAST. gesungen, sung.

* Regarding the omission of the *e*, see § 44, note 1. In the verb *singen*, as well as in the paradigm of the weak conjugation *loben*, the *e* is thrown out where it is put in parenthesis.

§ 44. SPECIMEN OF THE WEAK CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE.	CONJUNCTIVE.	CONDITIONAL.
<p><i>Sing.</i> ich lobe, du lob(e)st, er lob(e)t, <i>Plur.</i> wir loben, ihr lob(e)t, sie loben,*</p> <p>I praise, or am praising.</p>	<p>ich lobe, du lobest, er lobe, wir loben, ihr lobet, sie loben,</p> <p>I may praise.</p>	<p>ich lob(e)te, du lob(e)test, er lob(e)te, wir lob(e)ten, ihr lob(e)tet, sie lob(e)ten,</p> <p>(if) I praised.</p>
<p><i>Sing.</i> ich lob(e)te, du lob(e)test, er lob(e)te, <i>Plur.</i> wir lob(e)ten, ihr lob(e)tet, sie lob(e)ten,</p> <p>I praised, or was praising.</p>	IMPERFECT.	
<p><i>Sing.</i> ich habe gelob(e)t, I have praised.</p>	PERFECT.	
<p><i>Sing.</i> ich hätte gelob(e)t, I had praised.</p>	<p>ich habe gelob(e)t, I may have praised.</p>	<p>ich hätte gelob(e)t, (if) I had praised.</p>
<p><i>Sing.</i> ich werde loben, I shall praise.</p>	FUTURE.	
<p>ich würde loben, I should praise</p>	<p>ich werde loben, I shall praise.</p>	

FUTURE-PERFECT.

Sing. ich werde gelob(e)t haben, ich würde gelob(e)t haben,
I shall have praised. I should have praised.

IMPERATIVE.

Sing. lob(e), praise (thou),

lob(e) er, let him praise.

Plur. loben wir, let us praise,

lob(e)t, praise (you),

loben sie, let them praise.

INFINITIVES.

PRESENT. loben, to praise.

PAST. gelob(e)t haben, to have praised.

SUPINES.

PRESENT. zu loben, to praise.

PAST. gelob(e)t zu haben, to have praised.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT. lobend, praising.—PAST. gelob(e)t, praised.

Notes.

1. Where *e* is put in parenthesis in the above specimens, it depends on euphony if it must be thrown out or retained. Whilst it is generally thrown out, for example, in *bu singst, ihr singt; bu fangst, ihr fangt, or in bu sprichst, er spricht, ihr sprecht; bu sprachst, ihr sprachst*, it must be retained in *bu fündest, er fündet, ihr fündet; bu fandest, ihr fandest*. And likewise in the weak conjugation, the *e* is thrown out, for example, in *bu lobst, er lobt, ihr lobt; ich lobte; gelobt, while it is retained in bu leitest, er leitet, ihr leitet; ich leitete; geleitet*.

2. In the third person singular, present indicative, of those strong verbs which change their radical vowel in the present (according to § 41, 5), the termination *t* is contracted with the final consonant of the root, if that be *t* (or *th*); as—*gibt of gelten, schütt of schütten, tritt of treten, ficht of fächten, brät of braten, hält of halten, rath of rathe*.

Verbs to be conjugated like *singen*:—*trinken, to drink; finden, to find; binden, to bind; winden, to wind; ringen, to wrestle; springen, to spring*.

Verbs to be conjugated like *loben*:—*lieben, to love; lehren, to teach; lernen, to learn; malen, to paint; spielen, to play; leiten, to guide; baden, to bathe; rechnen, to reckon; sammeln, to gather; lächeln, to smile; wandern, to wander; plaudern, to chatter*.

EXERCISE IV.

Conjugation of Weak Verbs.

I praise him.¹ He praised me.² The teacher³ praises the pupil.⁴ Parents⁵ love⁶ their children.⁷ Do you learn⁸ (say, learn you) German?⁹ We are learning (say, we learn) German. My father has bought¹⁰ a horse. Where has he bought it? What¹¹ have you bought? I shall buy a watch.¹² Hast thou asked¹³ him? I should have asked him. He will ask you. What do you say?¹⁴ She said nothing.¹⁵ My mother¹⁶ has said it. They will build¹⁷ a house. They had built a church.¹⁸ Who has been laughing?¹⁹ (say, has laughed?) They laughed. Why²⁰ do you laugh? What does he wish?²¹ Where does he live?²² We should have heard²³ of it.²⁴ Hear my advice.²⁵ He does not hear you.²⁶ My father wishes me to learn German (say, wishes that I may learn German). He says that he has learned²⁷ French²⁸ and²⁹ German. My friend³⁰ has told³¹ [to] me³² that he will buy³³ an estate.³⁴ What would you say, if I asked you? I should have said it, if you had wished it.

¹ Him, ihn. ² Me, mich. ³ The teacher, der Lehrer. ⁴ The pupil (acc.), den Schüler. ⁵ Parents, Eltern. ⁶ To love, lieben. ⁷ Their children, ihre Kinder. ⁸ To learn, lernen. ⁹ German, Deutsch. ¹⁰ To buy, kaufen. ¹¹ What, was. ¹² A watch, eine Uhr. ¹³ To ask (a question), fragen. ¹⁴ To say, sagen. ¹⁵ Nothing, nichts. ¹⁶ My mother, meine Mutter. ¹⁷ To build, bauen. ¹⁸ A church, eine Kirche. ¹⁹ To laugh, lachen. ²⁰ Why, warum. ²¹ To wish, wünschen. ²² To live—that is, to dwell—wohnen. ²³ To hear, hören. ²⁴ Of it, davon. ²⁵ My advice (acc.), meinen Rath. ²⁶ Arrange, 'he hears you not.' (See § 27.) ²⁷ Use the perfect conjunctive. ²⁸ French, französisch. ²⁹ And, und. ³⁰ My friend, mein Freund. ³¹ To tell, sagen. ³² To me, mir. ³³ Use the future conjunctive. ³⁴ An estate, ein Landgut.

EXERCISE V.

Conjugation of Weak Verbs continued.

It was raining.¹ Does it rain? I have counted² upon you.³ Do not count (say, count not) upon me.⁴ He strikes (say, forges⁵) the iron⁶ while⁷ it is hot. Thou consolest⁸ me. She has consoled me. I have been waiting⁹ (say, I have waited) for you.¹⁰ They waited a long time.¹¹ He does not

¹ To rain, regnen. The verbs occurring in these sentences, down to the third from the end, require the insertion of *e* in all cases where it is put in parenthesis in the specimen of the weak conjugation. ² To count, rechnen. ³ Upon you, auf Sie. ⁴ Upon me, auf mich. ⁵ To forge, schmieden. ⁶ The iron, das Eisen. ⁷ While it is hot, weil es warm ist. ⁸ To console, trösten. ⁹ To wait, warten. ¹⁰ For you, auf Sie. ¹¹ A long time, lange.

breathe.¹² They have killed¹³ a wolf.¹⁴ He is working.¹⁵ He worked too much.¹⁶ How long¹⁷ have you been working? Why do you not work? He would earn¹⁸ more,¹⁹ if he worked more diligently.²⁰ My cousin²¹ has studied²² medicine.²³ The merchant²⁴ would not have failed,²⁵ if he had been more cautious.²⁶ The enemy²⁷ has bombarded²⁸ the town.²⁹

¹² To breathe, athmen. ¹³ To kill, tödten. ¹⁴ A wolf (acc.), einen Wolf. ¹⁵ To work, arbeiten. ¹⁶ Too much, zu viel. ¹⁷ How long, wie lange. ¹⁸ To earn, verdienen. ¹⁹ More, mehr. ²⁰ More diligently, fleißiger. ²¹ My cousin, mein Vetter. ²² To study, studiren. Regarding the past participle of verbs ending in *iren*, see § 42, note. ²³ Medicine, Medicin. ²⁴ The merchant, der Kaufmann. ²⁵ To fail, falliren. ²⁶ More cautious, vorsichtiger. ²⁷ The enemy, der Feind. ²⁸ To bombard, bombardiren. ²⁹ The town, die Stadt.

§ 45. Most verbs form their perfect and pluperfect tenses, and the past infinitive and supine, by means of the auxiliary verb *haben*, to have. A considerable number of intransitive verbs, however, take *sein*, to be; namely—

1. Those intransitive verbs which denote a change of condition; as—*sterben*, to die; *genesen*, to recover from an illness; *wachsen*, to grow; *werden*, to become; *erkranken*, to fall ill; *einschlafen*, to fall asleep, &c.

2. Those intransitive verbs which denote motion to or from a place, especially the following:—

<i>fahren</i> , to go (in a conveyance),	<i>laufen</i> , to run,
<i>fallen</i> , to fall,	<i>reisen</i> , to travel,
<i>fliegen</i> , to fly,	<i>reiten</i> , to ride,
<i>fliehen</i> , to flee,	<i>segeln</i> , to sail,
<i>fließen</i> , to flow,	<i>senken</i> , to sink,
<i>gehen</i> , to go,	<i>springen</i> , to spring,
<i>kommen</i> , to come,	<i>steigen</i> , to rise,
<i>landen</i> , to land,	<i>ziehen</i> , to go, to move, &c.,

along with such of their compounds as have, like the simple verbs, the meaning of locomotion; e.g.—*abfahren*, to start; *wegfliegen*, to fly away; *ausgehen*, to go out; *ankommen*, to arrive; *entkommen*, to escape, &c.

3. The following intransitive verbs:—*bleiben*, to remain; *geschehen*, to happen; *sein*, to be; *begegnen*, to meet; *folgen* to follow; *weichen*, to yield.

§ 46. SPECIMEN OF A STRONG VERB CONJUGATED WITH *sein*.

INDICATIVE.	CONJUNCTIVE.	CONDITIONAL.
<p><i>Sing.</i> ich falle, du fällst, er fällt, <i>Plur.</i> wir fallen, ihr fallt, sie fallen,</p> <p>I fall, or am falling.</p>	<p><i>PRESENT.</i></p> <p>ich falle, du fallest, er falle, wir fallen, ihr fallet, sie fallen,</p> <p>I may fall.</p>	<p>(if) I fell</p> <p>ich fiele, du sielest, er fiele, wir fielen, ihr sielet, sie fielen,</p>
<p><i>Sing.</i> ich fiel, du fiellst, er fiel, <i>Plur.</i> wir fielen, ihr fielt, sie fielen,</p> <p>I fell, or was falling.</p>	<p><i>IMPERFECT.</i></p>	
<p><i>Sing.</i> ich bin du bist er ist <i>Plur.</i> wir sind ihr seid sie sind</p> <p>I have fallen.</p>	<p><i>PERFECT.</i></p> <p>ich sei du seiest er sei wir seien ihr seiet sie seien</p> <p>gefallen, I may have fallen.</p>	<p>gefallen, (if) I had fallen.</p> <p>ich wäre du wärest er wäre wir wären ihr wäret sie wären</p>

PLUPERFECT.

Sing. ich war
 du warst
 er war
Plur. wir waren
 ihr wart
 sie waren

I had fallen,
 gefallen,

FUTURE.

Sing. ich werde fallen,
 I shall fall.

Sing. ich werde gefallen sein,
 I shall have fallen.

ich würde fallen,
 I should fall

ich würde gefallen sein,
 I should have fallen.

FUTURE-PERFECT.

IMPERATIVE.

Sing. falle, fall (thou),
 falle er, let him fall.
Plur. fallen wir, let us fall,
 fallt, fall (you),
 fallen sie, let them fall.

INFINITIVES.

PRESENT. fallen, to fall.
 PAST. gefallen sein, to have fallen.
 SUPINES
 PRESENT. zu fallen, to fall.
 PAST. gefallen zu sein, to have fallen.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT. fallend, falling.—PAST. gefallen, fallen.

VII.

CLASSIFICATION OF THE STRONG VERBS.

§ 47. All verbs of the strong conjugation are divided into three classes, according as they agree in the radical vowel ; and each of the three classes has several subdivisions, according as they agree in the change of the radical vowel in the imperfect tense and the past participle.

The verbs of the first class agree in having the radical vowel *i* or *e*. A few only have *ā*, *ō*, *ū*, *o* or *au*. The verbs of the second class agree in having the diphthong *ei*. The verbs of the third class have *a*, a few *au*, *o* or *u*. The following table shews how in each class the radical vowel changes in the various subdivisions :—

RADICAL VOWEL IN THE INFINITIVE,
AND PRESENT TENSE.

IMPERFECT. PAST PARTICIPLE.

First Class.

<i>Subdiv.</i> 1. <i>i</i> ,	<i>a</i> ,	<i>u</i> .
2. <i>i</i> or <i>e</i> (<i>ā</i>),	<i>a</i> ,	<i>o</i> .
3. <i>i</i> (<i>ie</i> , <i>ū</i>) or <i>e</i> (<i>ā</i> , <i>ō</i> , <i>au</i>),	<i>o</i> ,	<i>o</i> .
4. <i>i</i> or <i>e</i> ,	<i>a</i> ,	<i>e</i> .

Second Class.

<i>Subdiv.</i> 1. <i>ei</i> ,	<i>i</i> (short),	<i>i</i> (short).
2. <i>ei</i> ,	<i>ie</i> (long),	<i>ie</i> (long).

Third Class.

<i>Subdiv.</i> 1. <i>a</i> (<i>au</i> , <i>o</i> , <i>u</i> , <i>ei</i>),	<i>i</i> or <i>ie</i> ,	<i>a</i> (<i>au</i> , <i>o</i> , <i>u</i> , <i>ei</i>).
2. <i>a</i> ,	<i>u</i> ,	<i>a</i> .

FIRST CLASS OF STRONG VERBS.

§ 48. FIRST SUBDIVISION.

Radical Vowel *i*.—Imperfect *a*.—Past Participle *u*.

binden, to bind,	band,	gebunden.
bringen, to press,	brang,	gedrungen.
finden, to find,	fand,	gefunden.
gelingen, to succeed,	gelang,	gelungen.
flingen, to sound,	flang,	geflungen.
ringen, to wring,	rang,	gerungen.
schlingen, to swallow,	schlang,	geschlungen.

schwinden, to vanish,	schwand,	geschwunden.
schwingen, to swing,	schwang,	geschwungen.
singen, to sing,	sang,	gesungen.
sinken, to sink,	sank,	gesunken.
springen, to spring,	sprang,	gesprungen.
stinken, to stink,	stank,	gestunken.
trinken, to drink,	trank,	getrunken.
winden, to wind,	wand,	gewunden.
zwingen, to force,	zwang,	gezwungen.

EXERCISE VI.

Who sings? Miss¹ A. sang a German song.² Mr³ B. and Mr D. will sing a duet.⁴ They have sung well.⁵ Do you drink wine⁶ or⁷ beer?⁸ I shall drink a glass⁹ of beer. They had drunk a bottle¹⁰ of wine. He drinks water. I should drink a cup¹¹ of tea.¹² Drink a cup of milk.¹³ I have found a knife. The boys¹⁴ sprang over the ditch.¹⁵ The stone¹⁶ is sinking. How¹⁷ did it sound? She wrung her (say, the) hands.¹⁸ He binds the book.¹⁹ That he may bind the book. That he has bound²⁰ the book. That he will bind²¹ the book. He would do it,²² if I forced him. I should have done it,²³ if you had forced me.

¹ Miss, Fräulein. ² A German song, ein deutsches Lied. ³ Mr, Herr. ⁴ A duet, ein Duett. ⁵ Well, gut. ⁶ Wine, Wein. ⁷ Or, oder. ⁸ Beer, Bier. ⁹ A glass, ein Glas. ¹⁰ A bottle, eine Flasche. ¹¹ A cup, eine Tasse. ¹² Tea, Thee. ¹³ Milk, Milch. ¹⁴ The boys, die Knaben. ¹⁵ Over the ditch, über den Graben. ¹⁶ The stone, der Stein. ¹⁷ How, wie. ¹⁸ The hands, die Hände. ¹⁹ The book, das Buch. ²⁰ Perfect conjunctive. ²¹ Future conjunctive. ²² He would do it, er würde es thun. ²³ I should have done it, ich würde es gethan haben.

§ 49. SECOND SUBDIVISION.

Radical Vowel i or e (ä).—Imperfect a.—Past Participle o.

*befehlen, to command,	befahl,	befohlen.
beginnen, to begin,	begann,	begonnen.
*bergen, to hide,	barg,	geborgen.
*bersten, to burst,	barst,	geborsten.
*brechen, to break,	brach,	gebrochen.
*empfehlen, to recommend,	empfohl,	empfohlen.

Wählen *kur.* *gewählt* *to choose*

*erschrecken, to be frightened,	erschraf,	erschrocken.
*gebären, to bring forth,	gebar,	geboren.
*gelten, to be worth,	galt,	gegolten.
gewinnen, to win,	gewann,	gewonnen.
*helfen, to help,	half,	geholfen.
kommen, to come,	kam,	gekommen.
*nehmen, to take,	nahm,	genommen.
rinnen, to flow,	rann,	geronnen.
*schelten, to chide,	schalt,	gescholten.
schwimmen, to swim,	schwamm,	geschwommen.
sinnen, to meditate,	sann,	gesonnen.
spinnen, to spin,	spann,	gesponnen.
*sprechen, to speak,	sprach,	gesprochen.
*stechen, to sting,	stach,	gestochen.
*stehlen, to steal,	stahl,	gestohlen.
*sterben, to die,	starb,	gestorben.
*treffen, to hit,	traf,	getroffen.
*verderben, to spoil,	verdarb,	verdorben.
*werben, to sue,	warb,	geworben.
*werden, to become,	ward or wurde,	geworden.
*werfen, to throw,	warf,	geworfen.

Notes.

1. All verbs of this and the following two subdivisions marked with an asterisk, change their radical vowel in the second and third persons singular of the present indicative, and in the second person singular of the imperative, according to the rule stated in § 41, 5. Gebären has in the present gebäre, gebierst, gebiert, imperative gebier. Nehmen has nehme, nimmst, nimmt, imperative nimm. Werden has wirst, wird by contraction, but in the imperative werde.

2. The following verbs of the above list have in the conditional of the present the modified vowel ü:—helfen, conditional hülfе; sterben, stürbe; verderben, verdürbe; werben, würbe; werden, würde; werfen has both wärfe and würde. A few have ö, especially beginnen, begönne; befehlen, beföhle; empfehlen, empföhle.

EXERCISE VII. X

The master¹ commands. The music² begins. I began too late.³ The ice⁴ breaks. He has recommended him. Do you recommend this wine?⁵ He always⁶ passed⁷ for

The master, der Herr.

² The music, die Musik.

³ Too late, zu spät.

⁴ The ice, das Eis.

⁵ This wine (acc.), diesen Wein.

⁶ Always, immer.

Arrange, 'he passed always.'

⁷ To pass, gelten.

a rich man.⁸ This coin⁹ is not current¹⁰ here. Who has won the great prize?¹¹ I never¹² win. She helps the poor.¹³ Who comes there? Come in.¹⁴ Do not come too late. We came too soon.¹⁵ You have (say, are) not come at the proper time.¹⁶ He took the pen.¹⁷ Take the pen. Has he taken the money?¹⁸ Will he take the money? He does not¹⁹ take any money. The women²⁰ are spinning flax.²¹ Do you speak German? She does not speak much.²² He is dying. Goethe died at²³ Weimar. The man has stolen a purse.²⁴ I have not²⁵ met²⁶ him anywhere. Throw the book aside.²⁷ That he may speak with me.²⁸ If he had spoken with me. If you came. If you had (say, were) come too late. That he may help us.²⁹ If the ice were to break.³⁰

⁸ For a rich man, für einen reichen Mann. ⁹ This coin, diese Münze
¹⁰ To be current, gelten. Arrange, 'is current here not.' ¹¹ The great prize, das große Loos. ¹² Never, nie. Arrange, 'I win never.' ¹³ The poor, den Armen (dat. pl.) ¹⁴ In, herein. ¹⁵ Too soon, zu früh. ¹⁶ At the proper time, zur rechten Zeit. ¹⁷ The pen, die Feder. ¹⁸ The money, das Geld. ¹⁹ Not any money, kein Geld. ²⁰ The women, die Frauen.
²¹ Flax, Flachs. ²² Much, viel. Arrange, 'she speaks not much.' ²³ At, zu. ²⁴ A purse, eine Börse. ²⁵ Not anywhere, nirgend. Arrange, 'I have him not anywhere met.' ²⁶ To meet, treffen. ²⁷ Aside, bei Seite. ²⁸ With me, mit mir. ²⁹ Us, uns. ³⁰ Use the present conditional.

§ 50. THIRD SUBDIVISION.

Radical Vowel i (ie, ü) or e (ä, ö, au).—Imperfect e.—Past Participle o.

-bewegen, to induce,	bewog,	bewogen.
-biegen, to bend,	bog,	gebogen.
-bieten, to bid, <u>offer</u> ,	bot,	geboten. <i>anbieten</i>
*dreschen, to thrash,	drosch,	gedroschen.
erschallen, to resound,	erscholl,	erschollen.
*fechten, to fight,	focht,	gefochten.
*flechten, to twine,	flocht,	geflochten.
-fliegen, to fly,	flog,	geflogen.
-fliehen, to flee,	floh,	geflohen.
-fließen, to flow,	floss,	geflossen. <i>der Fluß</i>
-frieren, to freeze,	fror,	gefroren. <i>vielleicht</i>
gähren, to ferment,	gohr,	gegohren.
-genießen, to enjoy,	genoss,	genossen. <i>der Genuss</i>
-gießen, to pour,	goß,	gegossen. <i>der Guss</i>

glimmen, to glimmer,	glomm,	geglommen.
— heben, to lift, <i>to heave</i>	hob,	gehoben.
flimmen, to climb,	flomm,	geflommen.
— kriechen, to creep,	froch,	gefrochen.
*erlöſchen, } to become	erloſch,	erloſchen.
*verlöſchen, } extinguished,	verloſch,	verloſchen.
lügen, to tell a lie,	log,	gelogen.
melfen, to milk,	molt,	gemolken.
pflegen, to practise,	pflog,	gepflogen.
*quellen, to spring forth,	quoll,	gequollen.
— riechen, to smell,	roch,	gerochen. <i>der Geruch</i>
*ſaufen, to drink (said of beasts),	ſoff,	geſoffen.
ſaugen, to suck,	ſog,	geſogen.
ſcheren, to shear,	ſchor,	geſchoren.
— ſchieben, to shove,	ſchob,	geſchoben.
— ſchießen, to shoot,	ſchoß,	geſchoſſen.
— ſchließen, to shut, <i>we, conclude</i>	ſchloß,	geſchloſſen.
*ſchmelzen, to melt,	ſchmolz,	geſchmolzen.
ſchnauben, to snort, <i>weak</i>	ſchnob,	geſchnoben.
ſchrauben, to screw, <i>weak</i>	ſchrob,	geſchroben.
ſchwären, to feſter,	ſchwor,	geſchworen.
*ſchwellen, to ſwell,	ſchwoll,	geſchwollen.
ſchwören, to ſwear,	ſchwor or ſchwur,	geſchworen.
ſieden, to boil (intransitive),	ſott,	geſotten.
ſprießen, to ſprout,	ſproß,	geſproſſen.
ſtieben, to be ſcattered,	ſtob,	geſtoben.
— triefen, to drip,	troff,	getroffen.
— (be)trügen, to deceive,	(be)trog,	(be)trogen.
— verbrießen, to vex (impersonal),	verdroß,	verdroſſen.
— verlieren, to loſe,	verlor,	verloren.
verſchallen, to ceaſe ſounding,	verſchoß,	verſchollen.
weben, to weave,	wob,	gewoben.
— wiegen, to weigh (intransitive), }	wog,	gewogen.
wägen, to weigh (transitive), }		
— ziehen, to pull, <i>move about</i>	zog,	gezogen. <i>der Zug</i>

Notes.

1. In all verbs of the above ſubdiviſion, the root of which ends in *ſ* or *ch*, ie long is changed in the imperfect and paſt participle into *o* ſhort; as—fließen, floß, geſloſſen; riechen, roch, gerochen. Also in ſieden, triefen, and ſaufen, the long vowel is changed into a ſhort one, and the following conſonant is doubled in conſequence; in ſieben, moreover, the *b* is hardened :—ſott, geſotten.

2. In the second and third persons singular of the present indicative, and the second person singular of the imperative of *erlöſchen* and *verlöſchen*, the *ö* is changed into *i*. In *ſaufen*, the *au* is modified in the second and third persons singular of the present indicative; see § 41, 5.

3. *Bewegen* in the signification 'to move' (physically), *pflegen*, in the sense of 'to nurse,' and 'to be accustomed,' and *wiegen* in the meaning 'to rock,' are conjugated by the weak form. *Quellen*, *ſchmelzen*, *ſchwellen*, *ſieben*, are likewise weak, when used in a transitive sense; the last of these four sometimes takes the weak conjugation, even when used in an intransitive meaning.

EXERCISE VIII.

The smith¹ has bent the iron.² The regiments³ have fought bravely.⁴ The girl was braiding⁵ her hair.⁶ The water flows. The bird⁷ flies. The enemy⁸ has (say, is) fled. It has been freezing last night.⁹ I have poured wine into the glass.¹⁰ The worm¹¹ creeps. The boy¹² has told a lie. The flowers¹³ smell. The dog¹⁴ has drunk water. I have shot a hare.¹⁵ Have you lost anything?¹⁶ I have lost a pocket-handkerchief.¹⁷ He lost everything.¹⁸ The wax¹⁹ is melting. Weigh the parcel.²⁰ Have you weighed it? It weighs ten pounds.²¹ He pulled the cap²² over his (say, the) head.²³ We shall remove²⁴ to²⁵ Germany.

¹ The smith, *der Schmied*. ² The iron, *das Eisen*. ³ The regiments, *die Regimenter*. ⁴ Bravely, *tapfer*. ⁵ To braid, *flechten*. ⁶ Her hair, *sich das Haar*. ⁷ The bird, *der Vogel*. ⁸ The enemy, *der Feind*. ⁹ Last night, *vorige Nacht*. ¹⁰ Into the glass, *in das Glas*. ¹¹ The worm, *der Wurm*. ¹² The boy, *der Knabe*. ¹³ The flowers, *die Blumen*. ¹⁴ The dog, *der Hund*. ¹⁵ A hare (acc.), *einen Hasen*. ¹⁶ Anything, *etwas*. ¹⁷ A pocket-handkerchief, *ein Taschentuch*. ¹⁸ Everything, *Alles*. ¹⁹ The wax, *das Wachs*. ²⁰ The parcel, *das Paket*. ²¹ Ten pounds, *zehn Pfund*. ²² The cap, *die Mütze*. ²³ Over the head, *über den Kopf*. ²⁴ To remove, *ziehen*. ²⁵ To, *nach*.

§ 51. FOURTH SUBDIVISION.

Radical Vowel *i* or *e*.—Imperfect *a* (long).—Past Participle *e*.

bitten, to beg,	bat,	gebeten.
*essen, to eat,	aß,	geessen.
*fressen, to eat (said of beasts),	fraß,	gefressen.
*geben, to give,	gab,	gegeben.
genesen, to recover from illness,	genas,	genesen.
*geschehen, to happen (impersonal),	geschah,	geschehen.
*lesen, to read,	las,	gelesen.

liegen, to lie,	lag,	gelegen.
*messen, to measure,	maß,	gemessen.
*sehen, to see,	sah,	gesehen.
sitzen, to sit,	saß,	gesehen.
*treten, to tread,	trat,	getreten.
*vergessen, to forget,	vergaß,	vergesen.

Note.

In the second and third persons singular of the present indicative, and the second person singular of the imperative of *treten*, long *e* is changed into short *i*, and the following consonant is doubled:—*ich trete*, *du trittst*, *er tritt*; imperative *tritt*.

EXERCISE IX.

He asks¹ for permission.² I ask for a slice³ of meat.⁴ A friend⁵ has asked me to dinner.⁶ Would you come, if I asked you? I eat very little.⁷ He eats a great deal.⁸ Eat⁹ as much as you like.¹⁰ They took (say, ate) supper.¹¹ Have you already¹² had (say, eaten) breakfast?¹³ We shall dine¹⁴ immediately.¹⁵ The dog eats a piece¹⁶ of bread.¹⁷ My teacher¹⁸ gives [to] me¹⁹ private lessons.²⁰ Give [to] me a glass²¹ of beer. I have given [to] him²² the key.²³ I should have given [to] her²⁴ some money, if she had asked me. She has (say, is) recovered from a severe illness.²⁵ It happened yesterday.²⁶ We are reading a German book.²⁷ My sister reads Schiller's *Wilhelm Tell*. Have you read Platen's poems?²⁸ Read slowly.²⁹ I should read more,³⁰ if I had more time. The books³¹ lie upon the table.³² He has measured the cloth.³³ Have you seen Miss M.? Yes,³⁴ I have seen her.³⁵ I see her every day.³⁶ Do you see the

¹ To ask, bitten. ² For permission, um Erlaubniß. ³ For a slice, um ein Stückchen. ⁴ Meat, Fleisch. ⁵ A friend, ein Freund. ⁶ To dinner, zum Mittagessen. ⁷ Very little, sehr wenig. ⁸ A great deal, sehr viel. ⁹ Use the second person singular of the imperative. ¹⁰ As much as you like, so viel du willst. ¹¹ Supper, Abendbrod. ¹² Already, schon. ¹³ Breakfast, Frühstück. ¹⁴ To dine, zu Mittag essen. ¹⁵ Immediately, sogleich. ¹⁶ A piece, ein Stück. ¹⁷ Bread, Brod. ¹⁸ My teacher, mein Lehrer. ¹⁹ To me, mir. ²⁰ Private lessons, Privatstunden. ²¹ A glass, ein Glas. ²² To him, ihm. ²³ The key (acc.), den Schlüssel. ²⁴ To her, ihr. ²⁵ From a severe illness, von einer schweren Krankheit. ²⁶ Yesterday, gestern. ²⁷ A German book, ein deutsches Buch. ²⁸ Poems, Gedichte. ²⁹ Slowly, langsam. ³⁰ More, mehr. ³¹ The books, die Bücher. ³² Upon the table, auf dem Tische. ³³ The cloth, das Tuch. ³⁴ Yes, ja. ³⁵ Her, sie. ³⁶ Every day, alle Tage.

house?³⁷ He does not see me.³⁸ Where does he sit? We sat upon a bench.³⁹ Step⁴⁰ into the room.⁴¹ He forgets nothing.⁴² Have you forgotten it? I shall not forget it.⁴³

³⁷ The house, das Haus. ³⁸ Arrange, 'he sees me not.' ³⁹ Upon a bench, auf einer Bank. ⁴⁰ To step, treten. ⁴¹ Into the room, in das Zimmer. ⁴² Nothing, nichts. ⁴³ Arrange, 'I shall it not forget.'

SECOND CLASS OF STRONG VERBS.

§ 52. FIRST SUBDIVISION.

Radical Vowel ei.—Imperfect and Past Participle i (short).

(sich) befeissen, to apply one's self,	beßiß,	beßissen.
— beißen, to bite,	biß,	gebißen.
— erbleichen, to turn pale,	erblich,	erblichen.
— gleichen, to resemble,	glich,	geglichen.
— gleiten, to glide,	glitt,	geglitten.
— greifen, to seize,	griff,	gegriffen.
— kneifen, to pinch,	kniff,	gekniffen.
— leiden, to suffer,	litt,	gelitten.
— pfeifen, to whistle,	pfiß,	gepfißen.
— reißen, to tear,	riß,	gerißen.
— reiten, to ride,	ritt,	geritten.
— schleichen, to sneak,	schlich,	geschlichen.
— schleifen, to grind,	schliff,	geschliffen.
— schleißén, to slit,	schliß,	geschliffen.
— schmeißen, to sling,	schmiß,	geschmissen.
— schneiden, to cut,	schnitt,	geschnitten.
— schreiten, to stride,	schrìtt,	geschritten.
— streichen, to stroke, <i>paint in one</i> strich,	gestrich,	gestrichen.
— streiten, to contend, <i>color</i> - stritt,	gestritten.	
— weichen, to yield,	wich,	gewichen.

Note.

The vowel being short in the imperfect and past participle, the final consonant of the root is doubled, except where it is double already. In two verbs—namely, leiten and schneiden—the *t* is hardened.

EXERCISE X.

The dog bites. The dog has bitten the child. The sister¹ resembles the brother.² I seized him. The disease³ has

¹ The sister, die Schwester. ² The brother, dem Bruder (dat.) ³ The disease, die Krankheit.

der Strich - dash - streak - - -

spread.⁴ They suffer want.⁵ Does he suffer want? Would you have suffered it? The boy was whistling a tune.⁶ The girl has torn the book to pieces.⁷ He rides fast.⁸ That he may ride fast. If he rode fast. We rode through the forest.⁹ They have (say, are) gone on horseback¹⁰ to¹¹ D. The gardener¹² is pruning¹³ the trees.¹⁴ I have cut my finger.¹⁵

⁴ To spread, um sich greifen. ⁵ Want, Mangel. ⁶ A tune, ein Lied. ⁷ To pieces, entzwei. ⁸ Fast, schnell. ⁹ Through the forest, durch den Wald. ¹⁰ To go on horseback, reiten. ¹¹ To, nach. ¹² The gardener, der Gärtner. ¹³ To prune, beschneiden. ¹⁴ The trees, die Bäume. ¹⁵ My finger, mich in den Finger.

§ 53. SECOND SUBDIVISION.

Radical Vowel ei.—Imperfect and Past Participle ie (long.)

• bleiben, to remain,	blieb,	geblieben.
• gedeihen, to prosper,	gedieh,	gediehen.
• leihen, to lend,	lieh,	geliehen.
• meiden, to avoid,	mied,	gemieden.
• preisen, to praise,	pries,	gepriesen.
• reiben, to rub,	rieb,	gerieben.
• scheiden, to part,	schied,	geschieden.
• scheinen, to shine,	schien,	geschienen.
• schreiben, to write,	schrieb,	geschrieben.
• schreien, to scream,	schrie,	geschrien.
• schweigen, to be silent,	schwieg,	geschwiegen.
• speien, to spit,	spie,	gespien.
• steigen, to mount,	stieg,	gestiegen.
• treiben, to drive,	trieb,	getrieben.
• weisen, to shew,	wies,	gewiesen.
• zeihen, to accuse,	zieh,	geziehen.

(ver)
handen

EXERCISE XI.

Do you remain at home? I did not stay¹ long.² We have (say, are) remained friends. Lend [to] me³ your stick.⁴ I have lent [to] him⁵ my German grammar.⁶ Avoid⁷ evil.⁸

¹ To stay, bleiben. ² Long, lange. ³ To me, mir. ⁴ Your stick (acc.), Ihren Stöck. ⁵ To him, ihm. ⁶ My German grammar, meine deutsche Grammatik. ⁷ Use the second person singular of the imperative. ⁸ Evil, das Böse.

He rubbed his brow.⁹ The sun¹⁰ is shining. The moon¹¹ was shining. I am writing a letter.¹² Have you written to your sister?¹³ I should write, if I had paper and ink.¹⁴ Would you answer,¹⁵ if I were to write¹⁶ to you?¹⁷ Write by return of post.¹⁸ Be silent. He was silent. I should have been silent, if he had not asked¹⁹ me. The water has (say, is) risen.²⁰ A lady²¹ alighted²² from the carriage.²³ The herdsman²⁴ drives the cattle²⁵ to the pasture.²⁶ I have shewn [to] him the road.²⁷

⁹ His brow, sich die Stirn. ¹⁰ The sun, die Sonne. ¹¹ The moon, der Mond. ¹² A letter (acc.), einen Brief. ¹³ To your sister, an Ihre Schwester. ¹⁴ Ink, Tinte. ¹⁵ To answer, antworten. ¹⁶ Use the present conditional. ¹⁷ To you, an Sie. ¹⁸ By return of post, mit umgehender Post. ¹⁹ To ask, fragen. Arrange, 'if he me not asked had.' ²⁰ To rise, steigen. ²¹ A lady, eine Dame. ²² To alight, steigen. ²³ From the carriage, aus dem Wagen. ²⁴ The herdsman, der Hirt. ²⁵ The cattle, das Vieh. ²⁶ To the pasture, auf die Weide. ²⁷ The road (acc.), den Weg.

THIRD CLASS OF STRONG VERBS.

§ 54. FIRST SUBDIVISION.

Radical Vowel a (au, o, u, ei).—Imperfect i or ie.—Past Participle a (au, o, u, ei).

*blasen, to blow,	bließ,	geblasen.
*braten, to roast,	briet,	gebraten.
*fallen, to fall,	fiel,	gefallen.
*fangen, to catch,	fiug,	gefangen.
gehen, to go,	ging,	gegangen.
*halten, to hold,	hielt,	gehalten.
*hängen, to hang,	hing,	gehungen.
hauen, to hew,	hieb,	gehauen.
heißen, to bid, or to be called,	hieß,	geheißen.
*lassen, to let,	ließ,	gelassen.
*laufen, to run,	lief,	gelaufen.
*rathen, to advise,	rieth,	gerathen.
rufen, to call,	rief,	gerufen.
*schlafen, to sleep,	schlief,	geschlafen.
*stoßen, to push,	stieß,	gestoßen.

Note.

All verbs of this and the following list marked with an asterisk, modify the radical vowel in the second and third persons singular of the present indicative, according to § 41, 5; as—ich fälle, du fällst, er fällt; ich laufe, du läufst, er läuft.

EXERCISE XII.

The cook¹ has roasted a leg of mutton.² The boy has (say, is) fallen from the tree.³ I fell over a stone.⁴ The water falls. I have caught a bird.⁵ Are you going to school?⁶ We went home.⁷ She has (say, is) gone to the ball.⁸ I should rather⁹ have (say, be) gone to the concert.¹⁰ Would you accompany¹¹ me, if I went? Walk¹² slowly.¹³ An honest man¹⁴ keeps¹⁵ his word.¹⁶ Did he deliver¹⁷ a speech?¹⁸ The coat¹⁹ hangs in the wardrobe.²⁰ What (say, how²¹) is this²² called²³ in German?²⁴ Let me go. She has left²⁵ her books²⁶ at home. A stag²⁷ runs fast. We ran through the garden.²⁸ What have you advised [to] him? I shall call my man-servant.²⁹ He sleeps. He has been sleeping.

¹ The cook, die Köchin. ² A leg of mutton, eine Hammelfeule. ³ From the tree, von dem Baume. ⁴ Over a stone, über einen Stein. ⁵ A bird (acc.), einen Vogel. ⁶ To school, in die Schule. ⁷ Home, nach Haus. ⁸ To the ball, auf den Ball. ⁹ Rather, lieber. ¹⁰ To the concert, in's Concert. ¹¹ To accompany, begleiten. ¹² To walk, gehen. ¹³ Slowly, langsam. ¹⁴ An honest man, ein ehrlicher Mann. ¹⁵ To keep, halten. ¹⁶ His word, sein Wort. ¹⁷ To deliver, halten. ¹⁸ A speech, eine Rede. ¹⁹ The coat, der Rock. ²⁰ In the wardrobe, in dem Kleiderschrank. ²¹ How, wie. ²² This, dies. ²³ To be called, heißen. ²⁴ In German, auf Deutsch. ²⁵ To leave, lassen. ²⁶ Her books, ihre Bücher. ²⁷ A stag, ein Hirsch. ²⁸ Through the garden, durch den Garten. ²⁹ My man-servant (acc.), meinen Bedienten.

§ 55. SECOND SUBDIVISION.

Radical Vowel a.—Imperfect u.—Past Participle a.

*backen, to bake,	bak,	gebacken.
*fahren, to drive, or go in a conveyance,	fubr,	gefahren.
*graben, to dig,	grab,	gegraben.
laden, to load,	lud,	geladen.
schaffen, to create,	schuf,	geschaffen.
*schlagen, to strike,	schlug,	geschlagen.
stehen, to stand,	stand (obsolete stund),	gestanden.
*tragen, to carry,	trug,	getragen.
*wachsen, to grow,	wuchß,	gewachsen.
*waschen, to wash,	wusch.	gewaschen.

EXERCISE XIII.

We shall drive through the park.¹ They drove very fast. They have dug a hole.² The gardener is digging potatoes.³ The clock⁴ strikes. It has struck three.⁵ God⁶ created the world⁷ out of nothing.⁸ Who stands there? We stood still.⁹ Have you carried the parcel to my house?¹⁰ This tree¹¹ bears¹² no fruit.¹³ If this tree bore fruit. The girl is grown very fast. Has the woman washed my clothes?¹⁴ That she may wash my clothes.

¹ Through the park, durch den Park. ² A hole, ein Loch. ³ Potatoes, Kartoffeln. ⁴ The clock, die Uhr. ⁵ Three, drei. ⁶ God, Gott. ⁷ The world, die Welt. ⁸ Out of nothing, aus nichts. ⁹ Still, still. ¹⁰ To my house, nach meinem Hause. ¹¹ This tree, dieser Baum. ¹² To bear, tragen. ¹³ No fruit, keine Frucht. ¹⁴ My clothes, meine Kleider.

VIII.

IRREGULAR CONJUGATION.

§ 56. The irregularity of the following verbs consists in this, that the formation of the principal parts—namely, the imperfect and past participle—is effected by a combination of the strong and weak conjugations. The radical vowel undergoes a change, as in the strong conjugation, while at the same time the terminations peculiar to the weak conjugation are affixed. In bringen, to bring, and denken, to think, moreover, the final consonants of the root ng and nt are changed into ch.

INFINITIVE.	IMPERFECT.	PAST PARTICIPLE.	PRESENT CONDITIONAL.
brennen, to burn,	brannte,	gebrannt,	brennte.
bringen, to bring,	brachte,	gebracht,	brächte.
denken, to think,	dachte,	gedacht,	dächte.
fennen, to know,	fante,	gefant,	fente.
nennen, to name,	nannte,	genannt,	nennte.
rennen, to run,	rannte,	gerannt,	rennte.
senden, to send,	{ sandte or sendete,	{ gesandt or ge= sendet,	{ sendete.
wenden, to turn,	{ wandte or wendete,	{ gewandt or ge= wendet,	{ wendete.

*I have
written*

*I have
written*

written

§ 57. *Thun*, to do (contracted for *thuen*), has the imperfect *that*, the present conditional *thäte*, the past participle *gethan*.

Wissen, to know; present indicative, *ich weiß*, *du weißt* (a contraction for *weißeſt*), *er weiß*; plural, *wir wissen*, *ihr wiſſet*, *ſie wiſſen*; present conjunctive, *ich wiſſe*; present conditional, *ich müſſte*; imperfect, *ich wüſſte*; past participle *gewußt*.

EXERCISE XIV.

The house is burning. A messenger¹ has brought a letter.² Waiter,³ bring a bottle of wine. What are you thinking of? (say, whereon⁴ are you thinking?) I thought of you.⁵ I should say it, if I thought otherwise.⁶ Do you not know⁷ me? I know you very well. We did not know him. He said that he knew⁸ me. They called⁹ him by his Christian name.¹⁰ The king¹¹ has sent a courier¹² to¹³ Paris. He has done his duty.¹⁴ Do [to] me the favour.¹⁵ He knows¹⁶ much. I do not know. We knew it. What would she say, if she knew it?

¹ A messenger, ein Bote. ² A letter (acc.), einen Brief. ³ Waiter, Kellner. ⁴ Whereon, woran. ⁵ Of you, an Sie. ⁶ Otherwise, anders. ⁷ To know, kennen, in this and the following three sentences. ⁸ Use the present conjunctive. ⁹ To call, nennen. ¹⁰ By his Christian name, bei ſeinem Vornamen. ¹¹ The king, der König. ¹² A courier (acc.), einen Courier. ¹³ To, nach. ¹⁴ His duty, ſeine Pflcht. ¹⁵ The favour (acc.), den Gefallen. ¹⁶ To know, wiſſen, in this and the following three sentences.

§ 58. The auxiliary verbs of mood, *dürfen*, *können*, *mögen*, *müſſen*, *ſollen*, *wollen*, have a complete conjugation through all tenses and moods, excepting the imperative mood, which is formed of *wollen* only. The corresponding English verbs, 'dare, can, may, must, shall, will,' being defective in conjugation, other phrases must frequently be employed, in order to express what in German is simply expressed by auxiliary verbs; as—*ich habe gedurft*, I have been permitted; *er hatte nicht gekonnt*, he had not been able; *wir werden müſſen*, we shall be obliged.

1. dürfen, to are to be permitted;	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ich darf, du darfst,} \\ \text{er darf, wir dürfen,} \\ \text{ihr dürft, sie dürfen;} \end{array} \right\}$	dürfe;	dürfte;	<u>dürft.</u>
2. können, (can) or to be <u>able</u> ;	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ich kann, du kannst,} \\ \text{er kann, wir können,} \\ \text{ihr könnt, sie können;} \end{array} \right\}$	föhne;	föhnte;	<u>geföhnt.</u>
3. mögen, (may) or to <u>like</u> ;	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ich mag, du magst,} \\ \text{er mag, wir mögen,} \\ \text{ihr mögt, sie mögen;} \end{array} \right\}$	möge;	möchte;	<u>gemöcht.</u>
4. müssen, (must) or to be obliged;	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ich muß, du mußt,} \\ \text{er muß, wir müssen,} \\ \text{ihr müßt, sie müssen;} \end{array} \right\}$	müße;	müßte;	<u>gemüßt.</u>
5. sollen, (shall) or to be obliged ^{held to} ordered ;	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ich soll, du sollst,} \\ \text{er soll, wir sollen,} \\ \text{ihr sollt, sie sollen;} \end{array} \right\}$	solle;	sollte;	<u>gesollt.</u>
6. wollen, to will, or to be willing; <i>he would do</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ich will, du willst,} \\ \text{er will, wir wollen,} \\ \text{ihr wollt, sie wollen;} \end{array} \right\}$	wolle;	wollte;	<u>gewollt.</u>

Note.

A peculiarity in the grammatical use of these auxiliary verbs of mood is the changing of the past participle into the infinitive in the past compound tenses, when it is immediately preceded by an infinitive:—*er hat sein Amt niederlegen müssen* (instead of *gemußt*), he has been obliged to resign his office. *Ich habe schreiben wollen* (instead of *gewollt*), I have been willing to write. *Er wird nicht haben kommen können* (instead of *gekonnt*), he will not have been able to come.

The same rule is observed with the auxiliary verb of mood *lassen*, to let, to suffer, to order, to cause. For example:—*ich habe das Feuer ausgehen lassen*, I have let the fire go out. *Ich habe den Schneider kommen lassen*, I have ordered the tailor to come.

EXERCISE XV. X

I dare not go. Is she permitted to dance?¹ Are you permitted to read? May (say, dare) I use² your pen?³ He has not been permitted⁴ to go out.⁵ Canst thou read? I cannot understand⁶ him. I shall not be able to stay.⁷ Can you come? I should gladly⁸ come, if I could. Why⁹ has he not been able to come? I should go (say, travel¹⁰) to¹¹ Germany, if I could speak German.¹² I do not like it. Thou mayst stay at home. You may read the letter.¹³ I did not like to contradict him.¹⁴ I should like¹⁵ to have a glass of wine. All men¹⁶ must die. We were obliged¹⁷ to wait. I have been obliged to write a letter.¹⁸ I should stay at home, if I were not obliged to pay a visit.¹⁹ He will be obliged to obey.²⁰ The children²¹ are²² to go to school.²³ Am I to accompany you? What am I to do? Will you venture²⁴ it? He is going to (say, will) set out²⁵ to-morrow.²⁶

¹ To dance, tanzen. Auxiliary verbs of mood take the infinitive, not the supine. ² To use, gebrauchen. ³ Your pen, Ihre Feder. ⁴ See § 58, note. ⁵ To go out, ausgehen. ⁶ To understand, verstehen. Put the negative after the object. ⁷ To stay, bleiben. ⁸ Gladly, gern. ⁹ Why, warum. ¹⁰ To travel, reisen. ¹¹ To, nach. ¹² Arrange, 'if I German speak could.' ¹³ The letter (acc.), den Brief. ¹⁴ Not to contradict him, ihm nicht widersprechen. ¹⁵ Use the present conditional of mögen. ¹⁶ All men, alle Menschen. ¹⁷ To be obliged, müssen, in this and the following three sentences. ¹⁸ A letter (acc.), einen Brief. ¹⁹ To pay a visit, einen Besuch machen. Arrange, 'if I not a visit to pay were obliged.' ²⁰ To obey, gehorchen. ²¹ The children, die Kinder. ²² Use sollen in this and the following two sentences. ²³ To go to school, in die Schule gehen. ²⁴ To venture, wagen. ²⁵ To set out, abreisen. ²⁶ To-morrow, morgen.

I have been willing, but²⁷ I have not been permitted. She was going to (say, would) visit²⁸ us,²⁹ but she has (say, is) not come. // I have let³⁰ the bird³¹ fly. The jailer³² has allowed³³ the thief³⁴ to escape.³⁵ I have caused³⁶ a cask³⁷ of wine to be bottled (say, to bottle³⁸).

²⁷ But, aber. ²⁸ To visit, besuchen. ²⁹ Us, uns. ³⁰ To let, lassen. See § 58, note. ³¹ The bird (acc.), den Vogel. ³² The jailer, der Gefangenwärter. ³³ To allow, lassen. ³⁴ The thief (acc.), den Dieb. ³⁵ To escape, entspringen. ³⁶ To cause, lassen. ³⁷ A cask, ein Faß. ³⁸ To bottle, abgießen.

IX

CONJUGATION OF THE PASSIVE VOICE.

§ 59. The passive voice is formed by the auxiliary *werden*, along with the past participle of the verb. In the past compound tenses, the participle *geworden* loses the augment *ge*, as in *ich bin gelobt worden* (for *geworden*), I have been praised.

INDICATIVE.	CONJUNCTIVE.	CONDITIONAL.
	PRESENT.	
<i>ich werde gelobt,</i> I am (being) praised.	<i>ich werde gelobt,</i> I may be praised.	<i>ich würde gelobt,</i> (if) I were (being) praised.
	IMPERFECT.	
<i>ich wurde (or war) gelobt,</i> I was (being) praised.		
	PERFECT.	
<i>ich bin gelobt worden,</i> I have been praised.	<i>ich sei gelobt worden,</i> I may have been praised.	<i>ich wäre gelobt worden,</i> (if) I had been praised.
	PLUPERFECT.	
<i>ich war gelobt worden,</i> I had been praised.		

FUTURE.

ich werde gelobt werden,
I shall be praised.

ich werde gelobt werden,
I shall be praised.

ich würde gelobt werden,
I should be praised.

FUTURE-PERFECT.

ich werde gelobt worden sein,
I shall have been praised.

ich werde gelobt worden sein,
I shall have been praised.

ich würde gelobt worden sein,
I should have been praised.

IMPERATIVE.

werde gelobt, be (thou) praised.

INFINITIVES.

PRESENT. gelobt werden, to be praised.

PAST. gelobt worden sein, to have been praised.

SUPINES.

PRESENT. gelobt zu werden, to be praised.

PAST. gelobt worden zu sein, to have been praised.

Conjugate the passive voice of any of the following verbs:—*lieben*, to love; *fragen*, to question; *führen*, to guide; *hören*, to hear; *finden*, to find; *bitten*, to ask; *schelten*, to scold; *sehen*, to see; *stoßen*, to push; *rufen*, to call.

EXERCISE XVI.

The pupil¹ has been praised by the teacher.² The child is [being] loved by its parents.³ I have not been asked. We were [being] conducted⁴ through the royal apartments.⁵ The walls⁶ were [being] adorned⁷ with garlands.⁸ A church is [being] built. The rooms⁹ have been painted.¹⁰ The best knives¹¹ are [being] manufactured¹² at¹³ Sheffield. The newspaper¹⁴ had not yet¹⁵ been read. The purse¹⁶ has been found by a school-boy.¹⁷ The enemy has been put to flight.¹⁸ Will the work¹⁹ be printed²⁰ this summer?²¹ It would have been printed already,²² if the author²³ had not been ill. What would you say, if you were [being] asked?²⁴ They say,²⁵ that the town²⁶ has been ransacked²⁷ by the enemy.²⁸

¹ The pupil, der Schüler. ² By the teacher, von dem Lehrer. ³ By its parents, von seinen Eltern. ⁴ To conduct, führen. ⁵ Through the royal apartments, durch die königlichen Gemächer. ⁶ The walls, die Wände. ⁷ To adorn, schmücken. ⁸ With garlands, mit Guirlanden. ⁹ The rooms, die Zimmer. ¹⁰ To paint, malen. ¹¹ The best knives, die besten Messer. ¹² To manufacture, fabriciren. See § 42, note. ¹³ At, in. ¹⁴ The newspaper, die Zeitung. ¹⁵ Not yet, noch nicht. ¹⁶ The purse, die Börse. ¹⁷ By a school-boy, von einem Schulfreien. ¹⁸ To put to flight, in die Flucht schlagen. ¹⁹ The work, das Werk. ²⁰ To print, drucken. ²¹ This summer, diesen Sommer. ²² Already, schon. ²³ The author, der Verfasser. ²⁴ To ask, fragen. ²⁵ They say, man sagt. ²⁶ The town, die Stadt. ²⁷ To ransack, plündern. Use the perfect conjunctive. ²⁸ By the enemy, von dem Feinde.

X.

COMPOUND VERBS.

§ 60. A verb compounded with a prefix is called a *compound verb*. Compound verbs follow the same conjugation as the simple verbs from which they are formed. The prefix of a verb is either separable or inseparable, and hence a verb is in the former case a *separable compound verb*; in the latter, an *inseparable compound verb*.

An inseparable compound verb does not take the augment *ge* in the past participle (§ 42, note); in all other respects it

is conjugated like a simple verb. The accent is laid on the root of the verb.

A separable compound verb requires its prefix to be separated, under the following circumstances:—1. The prefix is removed to the end of the clause, when the clause is a principal one, and when, at the same time, the verb stands in a simple tense—that is, in the present or imperfect tense of the active voice, or in the imperative mood. For example:—*ich höre auf*, I cease; *ich hörte auf*, I ceased; *höre auf*, cease. In dependent clauses, on the contrary, the prefix keeps its place before the verb, the verb taking the last place in the sentence; as—*wenn ich aufhöre*, if I cease; *als ich aufhörte*, when I ceased. 2. In the past participle, the augment *ge* is inserted between the prefix and the simple verb; as—*aufgehört*, ceased. 3. In the supine, the preposition *zu* is inserted between the prefix and the simple verb; as—*aufzuhören*, to cease. A separable prefix always has the principal accent.

§ 61. The syllables *be*, *er*, *emp*, *ent*, *ver*, *zer*, *ge*, and the preposition *wider*, against, are used as inseparable prefixes. For example:—*Er hat die Wahrheit seiner Aussage beschworen*, he has sworn to the truth of his evidence. *Ich habe meinen Zweck erreicht*, I have attained my object. *Gott erfüllt, was er verspricht*, God performs what he promises.

Note.

The prefix *miß* also is inseparable, but as to accentuation, the practice varies, some verbs compounded with *miß* having the accent on the root, others on the prefix. In the past participle, the augment *ge* is dropped in those verbs which have the accent on the root; as—*mißlung'en*, miscarried; *mißfall'en*, displeased; *mißgönnt'*, grudged; *mißrath'en*, miscarried; whilst in those verbs which have the accent on the prefix *miß*, the augment is retained. In some verbs of the latter class, the augment is placed before the prefix; as—*gemiß'braucht*, abused; *gemiß'billigt*, disapproved; *gemiß'handelt*, ill-used; in others after the prefix; as—*miß'geachtet*, disregarded; *miß'geartet*, degenerated. In the supine, *zu* is always put before the verb; as—*zu mißrath'en*, to miscarry; *zu miß'brauchen*, to abuse; excepting those verbs which have the augment in the past participle inserted between the prefix and the root; as—*miß'zuachten*, to disregard; *miß'quarten*, to degenerate.

EXERCISE XVII.

I have visited¹ a friend² in Danzig. Have you watered³ the flowers? The thief⁴ has (say, is) escaped.⁵ Has he performed⁶ his promise?⁷ He has been recommended to us.⁸ Do you understand⁹ me? Pray,¹⁰ excuse¹¹ me. He will sell¹² his¹³ horse. The estate¹⁴ has been sold. The house will not be let.¹⁵ Has he left¹⁶ England? The fortress¹⁷ was [being] destroyed.¹⁸ A new comet¹⁹ has been discovered.²⁰ The plan²¹ has (say, is) miscarried.²² His conduct²³ displeases²⁴ [to] me. The prince²⁵ has abused²⁶ his power.²⁷ I shall not abuse your kindness.²⁸ He has disregarded²⁹ my advice.³⁰

¹ To visit, besuchen. ² A friend (acc.), einen Freund. ³ To water, begießen. ⁴ The thief, der Dieb. ⁵ To escape, entspringen. ⁶ To perform, erfüllen. ⁷ His promise, sein Versprechen. ⁸ To us, uns. ⁹ To understand, verstehen. ¹⁰ Pray, bitte. ¹¹ To excuse, entschuldigen. ¹² To sell, verkaufen. ¹³ His, sein. ¹⁴ The estate, das Landgut. ¹⁵ To let, vermieten. ¹⁶ To leave, verlassen. ¹⁷ The fortress, die Festung. ¹⁸ To destroy, zerstören. ¹⁹ A new comet, ein neuer Komet. ²⁰ To discover, entdecken. ²¹ The plan, der Plan. ²² To miscarry, misslingen. ²³ His conduct, sein Betragen. ²⁴ To displease, missfallen. ²⁵ The prince, der Fürst. ²⁶ To abuse, mißbrauchen. ²⁷ His power, seine Macht. ²⁸ Your kindness, Ihre Güte. ²⁹ To disregard, mißachten. ³⁰ My advice (acc.), meinen Rath.

§ 62. Prepositions and adverbs, when used as prefixes, are separable; as—*ab*, off; *an*, on; *auf*, up; *aus*, out; *bei*, by; *da* or *dar*, there; *ein*, in; *fort*, away; *her*, hither; *hin*, thither; *mit*, with; *nach*, after; *nieder*, down; *ob*, over; *vor*, before; *weg*, away; *zu*, to; *zurück*, back; *zusammen*, together, and others. For example:—*Er reist heute ab*, he sets out to-day. *Ich fing meine Arbeit an*, I commenced my work. *Hören Sie auf*, leave off. *Ihre Wechsel sind angekommen*, your bills have arrived. *Wenn Sie ausgehen*, if you go out. *Als er fortging*, when he went away.

Note.

The prepositions *durch*, through; *über*, over; *unter*, under; *um*, round; *hinter*, behind, are used both as separable and inseparable prefixes, according as either the prefix or the root of the verb has the principal accent. If the same verb can be used in both ways, the variation in usage is accompanied by a marked difference in the signification; as—*durchziehen*, to pull through; *durchziehen*, to roam through; *übersetzen*, to leap over, to ferry over; *übersetzen*, to translate; *unterhalten*, to hold under; *unterhalten*, to entertain, &c.

§ 63. Compound prefixes are likewise used like simple separable prefixes, if each of the two components by itself is separable; as—*herein, hinaus, vorbei, vorher, vorüber, dabei, davon, &c.* For example:—*ich sage vorher*, I foretell; *er ist davon'gelaufen*, he has run away.

X

EXERCISE XVIII.

We rise¹ early.² We shall rise early. Rise. I fell asleep.³ Do not fall asleep. Dress⁴ yourself. Put on⁵ your hat.⁶ I shall take off⁷ my shoes.⁸ The play⁹ begins¹⁰ at seven o'clock.¹¹ Begin. Have you delivered¹² the letter?¹³ Deliver this parcel.¹⁴ Has (say, is) your friend¹⁵ arrived?¹⁶ The stage-coach¹⁷ starts¹⁸ every morning¹⁹ at seven o'clock. ~~I have spent²⁰ much money.²¹~~ Have the goods²² been unpacked?²³ The goods will be returned.²⁴ Have you shut²⁵ the door?²⁶ Open²⁷ the window.²⁸ It becomes light,²⁹ when³⁰ the sun rises.³¹ It becomes dark,³² when the sun sets.³³ The sun was just³⁴ rising, as³⁵ we set out.³⁶ I pull³⁷ the rope³⁸ through. We roamed through the surrounding country.³⁹ Ferry me over. Translate these lines.⁴⁰ We have translated a page.⁴¹ She held the glass⁴² under. She entertained the company.⁴³ I shall lead the way.⁴⁴ We went in.⁴⁵ The thief⁴⁶ has (say, is) run away.⁴⁷

¹ To rise, aufstehen. ² Early, früh. ³ To fall asleep, einschlafen. ⁴ To dress one's self, sich anziehen or ankleiden. ⁵ To put on, aufsetzen. ⁶ Your hat (acc.), Ihren Hut. ⁷ To take off, ausziehen. ⁸ My shoes, meine Schuhe. ⁹ The play, das Schauspiel. ¹⁰ To begin, anfangen. ¹¹ At seven o'clock, um sieben Uhr. ¹² To deliver, abliefern. ¹³ The letter (acc.), den Brief. ¹⁴ This parcel, dieses Paket. ¹⁵ Your friend, Ihr Freund. ¹⁶ To arrive, ankommen. ¹⁷ The stage-coach, der Gilwagen. ¹⁸ To start, abfahren. ¹⁹ Every morning, jeden Morgen. ²⁰ To spend, ausgeben. ²¹ Much money, viel Geld. ²² The goods, die Waaren. ²³ To unpack, auspacken. ²⁴ To return, zurückschicken. ²⁵ To shut, zumachen. ²⁶ The door, die Thür. ²⁷ To open, aufmachen. ²⁸ The window, das Fenster. ²⁹ Light, hell. ³⁰ When, wenn. ³¹ To rise, aufgehen. ³² Dark, dunkel. ³³ To set, untergehen. ³⁴ Just, eben. ³⁵ As, als. ³⁶ To set out, abreisen. ³⁷ See § 62, note, for this and the following six sentences. ³⁸ The rope, das Seil. ³⁹ The surrounding country, die Umgegend. ⁴⁰ These lines, diese Zeilen. ⁴¹ A page, eine Seite. ⁴² The glass, das Glas. ⁴³ The company, die Gesellschaft. ⁴⁴ To lead the way, vorangehen. ⁴⁵ To go in, hineingehen. ⁴⁶ The thief, der Dieb. ⁴⁷ To run away, davonlaufen.

XL

THE ARTICLE.

§ 64. The article serves to single out an object from among other objects of the same class. An object thus singled out can be of a more or less definite kind, and hence we distinguish between a *definite article*—*der, die, das, the*—and an *indefinite article*—*ein, eine, ein, a, an*. For example:—*der König von England*, the King of England; *die Könige von Preußen und von Sachsen*, the Kings of Prussia and of Saxony; *es war einmal ein König*, there was once a king. Both articles being declinable, they agree with the substantive in gender, number, and case. The plural of the definite article is the same for all the three genders; the indefinite can, from its nature, have a singular only.

§ 65. DECLENSION OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	ENGLISH.
	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	ALL THREE GENDERS.	
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>der,</i>	<i>die,</i>	<i>das,</i>	<i>die,</i>	<i>the.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>des,</i>	<i>der,</i>	<i>des,</i>	<i>der,</i>	<i>of the.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>dem,</i>	<i>der,</i>	<i>dem,</i>	<i>den,</i>	<i>to the.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>den,</i>	<i>die,</i>	<i>das,</i>	<i>die,</i>	<i>the.</i>

DECLENSION OF THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

	SINGULAR.			ENGLISH.
	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ein,</i>	<i>eine,</i>	<i>ein,</i>	<i>a.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>eines,</i>	<i>einer,</i>	<i>eines,</i>	<i>of a.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>einem,</i>	<i>einer,</i>	<i>einem,</i>	<i>to a.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>einen,</i>	<i>eine,</i>	<i>ein,</i>	<i>a.</i>

Note.

The definite article is often contracted with prepositions, as—

<i>a. am</i>	<i>for an dem.</i>	<i>c. an's</i>	<i>for an das.</i>
<i>beim</i>	<i>" bei dem.</i>	<i>auf's</i>	<i>" auf das.</i>
<i>im</i>	<i>" in dem.</i>	<i>durch's</i>	<i>" durch das.</i>
<i>vom</i>	<i>" von dem.</i>	<i>für's</i>	<i>" für das.</i>
<i>zum</i>	<i>" zu dem.</i>	<i>in's</i>	<i>" in das.</i>
<i>b. zur</i>	<i>" zu der.</i>	<i>um's</i>	<i>" um das.</i>

XII.

THE SUBSTANTIVE.

§ 66. The substantive is a word which expresses the idea of an existence—that is, of a person or thing. Substantives are divided into *concrete* and *abstract*. A concrete substantive is the name of an object which can be perceived by the senses, or which really exists; as—Mann, man; Frau, woman; Stadt, town; Fluß, river; Vogel, bird; Sonne, sun; Wasser, water. An abstract substantive is the name of a thing which is only conceived by the mind as having an independent existence; as—Sprung, leap; Fall, fall; Freude, joy; Schlaf, sleep; Schönheit, beauty; Thorheit, folly.

§ 67. The concrete substantives are divided into *common names*, *proper names*, *collective names*, and *names of materials*.

1. A common name is a name common to all the individuals of the same class of persons or things; as—Mann, man; Engel, angel; Hund, dog; Stadt, town; Fluß, river; Baum, tree; Vogel, bird.

2. A proper name is a name which is proper or peculiar to the individual person or thing bearing it, and therefore distinguishes one individual from all other individuals of the same kind; as—Luther, Karl, Europa, England, London, Themse.

3. Names of materials are names of things which do not admit of any distinction of individuals or of number, but only of quantity; as—Wasser, water; Wein, wine; Sand, sand; Zucker, sugar; Mehl, meal; Staub, dust.

4. A collective name expresses a plurality of individual persons or things of the same kind represented as a whole; as—Volk, people; Heer, army; Vieh, cattle; Priesterschaft, priesthood; Gebirge, range of mountains; Gewölk, collection of clouds.

§ 68. Abstract substantives are divided into—

1. Names of actions; as—Sprung, leap; Blick, look; Ruf, call; Schlag, stroke; Fall, fall; Geheul, howling; Gerassel, rattling.

2. Names of conditions; as—Friede, peace; Freude, joy; Furcht, fear; Schlaf, sleep; Ruhe, rest; Seligkeit, bliss.

3. Names of qualities ; as—*Schönheit*, beauty ; *Alter*, age ; *Jugend*, youth ; *Größe*, greatness ; *Weisheit*, wisdom ; *Thorheit*, folly.

XIII.

THE GENDER OF SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 69. The German language has *three genders*—the masculine, feminine, and neuter. In the appellations of persons and of those animals in which the language distinguishes the natural sex, the grammatical gender corresponds with the natural sex ; as—*der Mann*, the man ; *die Frau*, the woman ; *der Wolf*, the wolf ; *die Wölfin*, the she-wolf.

Note.

Das Weib, the woman, wife, is an exception. Also compounds like *das Frauenzimmer*, the woman ; *die Mannsperson*, the male person ; and such derivatives as—*das Mädchen*, the girl ; *das Fräulein*, the young lady ; *das Knäbchen*, the little boy, &c., in all of which the last component (*Zimmer*, *Person*) or the derivative suffix (*chen*, *lein*) determines the gender.

§ 70. All names of things should be of the neuter gender ; but by a kind of personification, the German language assigns the masculine or feminine gender even to many names of things. The gender of such substantives may be ascertained partly from their meaning, partly and principally from their form.

§ 71. The *meaning determines the gender* of names of things in the following cases :—

1. The names of seasons, months, and days are masculine, except *das Jahr*, the year.

2. The names of stones and mountains are masculine.

3. Most proper names of rivers are feminine ; except *der Rhein*, *der Main*, *der Neckar*, *der Lech*, *der Inn*, &c. ; and many rivers belonging to foreign countries, as—*der Po*, *der Nil*, *der Ganges*, *der Mississippi*, &c.

Note.

Some names of foreign rivers, originally masculine, are in German used as feminine, in accordance with the prevailing analogy of the language ; e. g.—*die Rhone*, *die Tiber*, *die Themse*.

4. Proper names of countries are neuter, excepting those ending in *ei*, *au*, and *z*, which are feminine, and *die Mark*, *die Kräm*, *die Levante*, *die Ukraine*, *der Peloponnes*. Names of towns are likewise neuter, excepting *der Haag*, the Hague.

5. The names of metals are neuter, except—*der Tomback*, pinchbeck; *der Stahl*, steel; *der Zink*, zinc; *der Kobalt*, cobalt; *der Wismuth*, bismuth; *die Platina*, platina.

6. All words which have not been substantives originally, but which are used as such, to express abstract ideas or names of things, are of the neuter gender; as—*daß Wenn* und *daß Aber*, the if and but; *daß A* und *O*, the alpha and omega; *daß Schöne*, the beautiful; *daß Erhabene*, the sublime, and all infinitives used in the sense of substantives; as—*daß Reisen*, the travelling; *daß Lesen*, the reading; *daß Leben*, the life.

§ 72. The form determines the gender in the following cases:—

1. Substantives of one syllable are masculine. The following substantives, however, are excepted:—*

a. FEMININE MONOSYLLABLES.

<i>die Angst</i> , anguish.	<i>die Form</i> , form.
" <i>Art</i> , manner.	" <i>Fracht</i> , freight.
" <i>Art</i> , axe.	" <i>Frau</i> , woman.
" <i>Bahn</i> , path.	" <i>Frucht</i> , fruit.
" <i>Bank</i> , bench.	" <i>Furcht</i> , fear.
" <i>Bai</i> , bay.	" <i>Gans</i> , goose.
" <i>Braut</i> , bride.	" <i>Gicht</i> , gout.
" <i>Brust</i> , breast.	" <i>Gier</i> , eagerness.
" <i>Bucht</i> , bay.	" <i>Gluth</i> , glow.
" <i>Burg</i> , castle.	" <i>Grust</i> , grave.
" <i>Faust</i> , fist.	" <i>Gunst</i> , favour.
" <i>Flucht</i> , flight.	" <i>Hand</i> , hand.
" <i>Flur</i> , field.	" <i>Hast</i> , haste.
" <i>Flut</i> , flood.	" <i>Haut</i> , skin.

* The lists of exceptions given here contain only substantives in ordinary use. More complete catalogues are furnished in the larger *Grammar*. All substantives marked thus + have two genders, but with a different signification for each. In every such instance, see § 73.

die Jagd, chase.	die Saat, seed.
" Kost, food.	" Sau, sow.
" Kraft, strength.	" Scham, shame.
" Kuh, cow.	" Schar, host, troop.
" Kunst, art.	" Schlacht, battle.
" Last, load.	" Schlucht, ravine.
" Laus, louse.	" Schmach, disgrace.
" List, cunning.	" Schnur, cord.
" Luft, air.	" Schrift, writing.
" Lust, pleasure.	" Schuld, guilt ; debt.
" Macht, might.	" See, sea.
" Magd, maid-servant.	" Spur, trace.
" Maus, mouse.	" Stadt, town.
" Milch, milk.	" Stirn, brow.
" Milz, milt.	" That, deed.
" Nacht, night.	" Thür, door.
" Naht, seam.	" Uhr, watch.
" Noth, need.	" Wacht, guard.
" Null, zero.	" Wahl, choice.
" Nuß, nut.	" Wand, wall.
" Pein, torment	" Welt, world.
" Pflicht, duty.	" Wurst, sausage.
" Post, post.	" Wuth, rage.
" Pracht, splendour.	" Zahl, number.
" Qual, torment.	" Zeit, time.

b. NEUTER MONOSYLLABLES.

das Amt, office.	das Boot, boat.
" Bad, bath.	" Brett, board.
† " Band, ribbon.	" Brod, bread.
" Beet, flower-bed.	" Buch, book.
" Beil, hatchet.	† " Bund, bundle.
" Bein, leg.	" Dach, roof.
" Bett, bed.	" Ding, thing.
" Bier, beer.	" Dorf, village.
" Bild, picture.	" Ei, egg.
" Blatt, leaf.	" Eis, ice.
" Blech, tin-plate.	" Erz, ore.
" Blei, lead.	" Fach, compartment.
" Blut, blood.	" Faß, cask.

das Feld, field.	das Licht, light.
" Fell, skin.	" Lied, song.
" Fest, festival.	" Lob, praise.
" Fett, grease, fat.	" Loch, hole.
" Fleisch, flesh.	+ " Lohn, wages.
" Floß, raft.	" Loos, lot.
" Garn, yarn.	" Loth, plumb-line.
" Geld, money.	" Mahl, meal, repast.
" Gift, poison.	" Malz, malt.
" Glas, glass.	+ " Mark, marrow.
" Gleis, track of a wheel.	" Maas, measure.
" Glied, limb.	" Maul, mouth (of beasts).
" Glück, luck.	" Meer, sea.
" Gold, gold.	" Mehl, flour.
" Grab, grave.	" Moos, moss.
" Gras, grass.	" Mus, pap, jam.
" Gut, property, estate.	" Nest, nest.
" Haar, hair.	" Netz, net.
+ " Harz, resin.	" Obst, fruit.
" Haupt, head.	" Ohr, ear.
" Haus, house.	" Öl, oil.
" Heer, army.	" Paar, pair.
" Hemd, shirt.	" Pech, pitch.
" Herz, heart.	" Pfand, pledge.
" Heu, hay.	" Pferd, horse.
" Holz, wood.	" Pfund, pound.
" Horn, horn.	" Rad, wheel.
" Huhn, fowl.	" Recht, right, law.
" Jahr, year.	" Reh, roe.
" Joch, yoke.	" Reich, empire.
" Kalb, calf.	" Rieß, ream.
" Kind, child.	" Rind, neat, heifer.
" Kinn, chin.	" Rohr, reed.
" Kleid, garment.	" Ross, horse.
" Knie, knee.	" Salz, salt.
" Korn, corn.	" Schaf, sheep.
" Kraut, herb.	" Schiff, ship.
" Kreuz, cross.	+ " Schild, sign-board.
" Lamm, lamb.	" Schilf, rush.
" Land, land.	" Schloß, lock ; castle.
" Laub, foliage.	" Schmalz, grease, lard.

das Schopf, number of sixty.	das Vieh, cattle.
" Schwein, pig.	" Volk, nation.
" Schwert, sword.	" Wachs, wax.
" Seil, rope.	" Weh, wo.
" Sieb, sieve.	" Weib, woman.
" Spiel, play.	" Werk, work.
" Stroh, straw.	" Wild, game.
" Stück, piece.	" Wohl, wellbeing.
" Tau, cable.	" Wort, word.
" Thal, valley.	" Wrack, wreck.
+ " Theil, share, portion.	" Zelt, tent.
" Thier, animal.	" Zeug, stuff.
+ " Thor, gate.	" Ziel, limit.
" Tuch, cloth.	" Zinn, tin.

2. Substantives ending in el, em, en, er, ing, ling, ig, sam, are masculine.

The terminations el, en, er, ing, however, are subject to the following exceptions:—

a. FEMININE EXCEPTIONS:—

IN el—

die Achsel, shoulder.	+die Mangel, mangle.
" Amsel, black-bird.	" Muschel, shell.
" Bibel, Bible.	" Nadel, needle.
" Dattel, date.	" Orgel, organ.
" Deichsel, carriage-pole.	" Pappel, poplar.
" Distel, thistle.	" Parabel, parable.
" Droffel, thrush.	" Regel, rule.
" Fabel, fable.	" Schachtel, band-box.
" Fackel, torch.	" Schaufel, shovel.
" Fessel, fetter.	" Schüssel, dish.
" Fibel, spelling-book.	" Sichel, sickle.
" Gabel, fork.	" Tafel, long table.
" Insel, island.	" Trommel, drum.
" Kanzel, pulpit.	" Wachtel, quail.
" Kartoffel, potato.	" Wurzel, root.
" Kugel, ball.	" Zwiebel, onion.
+ " Mandel, almond.	

IN *er*—

die Ader, vein.	die Leiter, ladder.
" Auster, oyster.	" Mauer, wall.
" Butter, butter.	" Mutter, mother.
" Ceder, cedar.	" Nummer, number.
" Elster, magpie.	" Scheuer, barn.
" Feder, feather, pen.	" Schulter, shoulder.
" Folter, rack.	" Schwester, sister.
" Kammer, chamber.	+ " Steuer, tax.
" Kelter, wine-press.	" Tochter, daughter.
+ " Kiefer, pine.	" Wimper, eyelash.
" Leber, liver.	

Note.

The names of rivers ending in *er* or *el* are also feminine, according to the general rule in § 71, 3; *e. g.*—die Ober, die Weser, die Mosel, &c.

b. NEUTER EXCEPTIONS :—

IN *el*—

das Bündel, bundle.	das Orakel, oracle.
" Kapitel, chapter.	" Segel, sail.
+ " Mandel, number of fifteen.	" Siegel, seal.
" Mittel, means.	" Uebel, evil.

IN *en*—

das Becken, basin.	das Kissen, cushion.
" Eisen, iron.	" Wappen, coat-of-arms.
" Füllen, colt.	" Zeichen, token.

And all infinitives when used as substantives.

IN *er*—

das Alter, age.	das Lager, couch.
+ " Bauer, bird-cage.	" Vaster, vice.
" Fenster, window.	" Leder, leather.
" Fuder, cart-load.	" Messer, knife.
" Feuer, fire.	" Muster, pattern.
" Fieber, fever.	" Opfer, sacrifice.
" Futter, fodder.	" Pflaster, plaster.
" Kloster, cloister.	" Pulver, powder.
" Kupfer, copper.	" Ruder, oar.

das Silber, silver.	das Wasser, water.
† " Steuer, helm.	" Wetter, weather.
" Theater, theatre.	" Wunder, wonder.
" Ufer, shore.	" Zimmer, apartment.

EXCEPTION IN ing:—

das Messing, brass.

3. Substantives ending in e, ung, heit, feit, schaft, end, in, ei, are feminine.

a. MASCULINE EXCEPTIONS IN e:—

der Buchstabe, letter of the alphabet.	der Schade, injury.
" Friede, peace.	" Wille, will.
" Funke, spark.	" Affe, monkey.
" Gedanke, thought.	" Drache, dragon.
" Glaube, faith.	" Falke, falcon.
" Haufe, heap.	" Hase, hare.
" Name, name.	" Löwe, lion.
" Same, seed.	" Rabe, raven.
	" Käse, cheese.

And names of male persons; as—der Bote, the messenger; der Knabe, the boy, &c.

b. NEUTER EXCEPTIONS IN e:—

das Auge, eye. das Ende, end. † das Erbe, inheritance.

EXCEPTION IN schaft:—

das Betschaft, seal.

EXCEPTIONS IN end:—

der Abend, evening. das Dugend, dozen.

4. Substantives ending in chen, lein, sal, sel, niß, thum, are neuter.

EXCEPTIONS IN niß:—

die Bedrängniß, distress.	die Finsterniß, darkness.
" Besorgniß, apprehension.	" Kenntniß, knowledge.
" Betrübniß, affliction.	" Trockniß, drought.
" Erlaubniß, permission.	" Verdammniß, damnation.
" Ersparniß, savings.	" Wildniß, wilderness.

IN *thum* :—

der Irrthum, error.	der (or daß) Wächsthum,
" Reichthum, riches.	growth.

5. Substantives which have the augment *ge* are neuter, with the following exceptions :—

a. MASCULINE—

der Gebrauch, usage.	der Geruch, smell.
" Gedanke, thought.	" Gesang, singing.
" Gefallen, favour.	" Geschmack, taste.
" Genuß, enjoyment.	" Gewinn, gain.

b. FEMININE—

die Geburt, birth.	die Geschichte, history.
" Geduld, patience.	" Gestalt, shape.
" Gefahr, danger.	" Gewalt, power.

The names of persons are also excepted, their gender being determined by their meaning ; and likewise substantives ending in *ung*, *heit*, *feit*, *schaft*, *sam*, which take the gender assigned to them by their termination.

6. Compound substantives usually follow the gender of their last component. *Stand*, for example, being of the masculine gender, *Verstand*, *Aufstand*, *Zustand*, *Gegenstand*, *Umstand*, &c., are also masculine. Similarly, *Buch* being neuter, *Handbuch*, *Taschenbuch*, *Lesebuch*, are likewise neuter.

7. Foreign substantives usually retain their original gender ; as—*der Kerker*, prison, from *carcer* ; *die Natur*, nature, from *natura* ; *daß Kloster*, cloister, from *claustrum*. Hence all substantives ending in *ie*, *ion*, *tät*, *is*, *enz*, *ur*, are feminine.

§ 73. A number of substantives have two genders, with a different signification for each. The following are worthy of special notice :—

der Band, volume of a book.	daß Band, ribbon, tie.
" Bauer, peasant.	" Bauer, bird-cage.
" Erbe, heir.	" Erbe, inheritance.
" Harz, Harz mountains.	" Harz, resin.
" Heide, heathen.	die Heide, heath.
" Kiefer, jaw.	" Kiefer, pine.

der Lohn, reward.	daß Lohn, wages.
die Mandel, almond.	" Mandel, number of fifteen.
der Mangel, want, defect.	die Mangel, mangle.
" Schild, shield.	daß Schild, sign-board.
" See, lake.	die See, sea.
die Steuer, tax, contribution.	daß Steuer, helm.
der Theil, part of a whole.	" Theil, share, portion.
" Thor, fool.	" Thor, gate.

XIV.

THE DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 74. Declension in general consists in the affixing of terminations, and in the case of substantives, sometimes also in the modifying of the vowel of the stem. In declension are distinguished two numbers—namely, singular and plural; and four cases in each number—namely, nominative, genitive (or possessive), dative (or person-case), accusative (or objective).

§ 75. There are two declensions—the *strong* and the *weak*. Every substantive is declined according to either the one or the other.

Words of the strong declension take, in the singular, the termination *es* for the genitive, and *e* for the dative, the accusative being the same as the nominative. In the plural, they take *e* in the nominative, genitive, and accusative, and *en* in the dative. *Words of the weak declension* take the termination *en* (or simply *n*) in all cases except the nominative singular. A number of words of the strong declension, moreover, have their vowel modified in the plural, whilst all words of the weak declension leave their vowel unchanged.

Certain words of the strong declension lose the vowel *e* in all the inflectional terminations, so that the only terminations which require to be affixed are—*s* in the genitive singular, and *n* in the dative plural, if the word itself does not end in *n* or *m*. This is called the *contracted form* of the strong declension.

Another class of words of the strong declension take, in the plural, the enlarged termination *er* in the nominative, genitive, and accusative, and *ern* in the dative; all the cases of the singular, however, retaining the primary terminations of the strong declension. This is called the *enlarged form* of the strong declension.

§ 76. The *strong declension* comprises substantives of all three genders, but principally of the masculine and neuter. A small number of feminine substantives are declined by the primary form, two by the contracted form, but none by the enlarged. The *weak declension* comprehends only masculine and feminine substantives.

§ 77. All feminine substantives remain unchanged in the singular, whether they belong to the strong or weak declension in the plural.

§ 78. TABULAR VIEW OF THE TERMINATIONS OF BOTH DECLENSIONS.

STRONG DECLENSION.

	PRIMARY FORM.	CONTRACTED FORM.	ENLARGED FORM.
<i>Sing.</i>			
<i>Nom.</i>	—	—	—
<i>Gen.</i>	(e)ſ,	ſ,	(e)ſ,
<i>Dat.</i>	(e),	—	(e),
<i>Acc.</i>	—	—	—
	<div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <div style="font-size: 4em; margin-right: 10px;">}</div> <div> No change in feminine substantives. </div> </div>		
<i>Plur.</i>			
<i>Nom.</i>	e,	—	er,
<i>Gen.</i>	e,	—	er,
<i>Dat.</i>	en,	n,	ern,
<i>Acc.</i>	e,	—	er,
	<div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <div style="font-size: 4em; margin-right: 10px;">}</div> <div> Some with modification of vowel. </div> </div>		
	<div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <div style="font-size: 4em; margin-right: 10px;">}</div> <div> Some with modification of vowel. </div> </div>		
	<div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <div style="font-size: 4em; margin-right: 10px;">}</div> <div> Modification of vowel. </div> </div>		

WEAK DECLENSION.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Nom.</i>	—	<div style="font-size: 4em; vertical-align: middle;">}</div> No change in feminines.
	<i>Gen.</i>	en or n,	
	<i>Dat.</i>	en or n,	
	<i>Acc.</i>	en or n,	
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Nom.</i>	en or n,	
	<i>Gen.</i>	en or n,	
	<i>Dat.</i>	en or n,	
	<i>Acc.</i>	en or n.	

Note.

The dropping of the vowel *e* in the inflectional terminations of the genitive and dative singular in the strong declension, depends on euphony. In words of more than one syllable having an unaccented suffix, it is commonly thrown out; as—*der König*, gen. *des Königs*, dat. *dem König*; *der Jüngling*, gen. *des Jünglings*, dat. *dem Jüngling*; *der Monat*, gen. *des Monats*, dat. *dem Monat*.

In the weak declension, the vowel *e* is always thrown out in words ending in *e*, *i*, or *r*; as—*der Knabe*, gen. *des Knaben*; *der Vater*, plur. *die Väter*; *die Feder*, plur. *die Federn*; *die Schüssel*, plur. *die Schüsseln*.

SPECIMENS OF THE STRONG DECLENSION.

a. PRIMARY FORM.

<i>Sing. Nom.</i>	<i>der Sohn</i> , the son.	<i>die Kunst</i> , the art.
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>des Sohnes</i> , of the son.	<i>der Kunst</i> , of the art.
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>dem Sohne</i> , to the son.	<i>der Kunst</i> , to the art.
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>den Sohn</i> , the son.	<i>die Kunst</i> , the art.
<i>Plur. Nom.</i>	<i>die Söhne</i> , the sons.	<i>die Künste</i> , the arts.
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>der Söhne</i> , of the sons.	<i>der Künste</i> , of the arts.
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>den Söhnen</i> , to the sons.	<i>den Künsten</i> , to the arts.
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>die Söhne</i> , the sons.	<i>die Künste</i> , the arts.

b. CONTRACTED FORM.

<i>Sing. Nom.</i>	<i>der Vater</i> , the father.	<i>der Hafen</i> , the harbour.
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>des Vaters</i> , of the father.	<i>des Hafens</i> , of the harbour.
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>dem Vater</i> , to the father.	<i>dem Hafen</i> , to the harbour.
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>den Vater</i> , the father.	<i>den Hafen</i> , the harbour.
<i>Plur. Nom.</i>	<i>die Väter</i> , the fathers.	<i>die Häfen</i> , the harbours.
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>der Väter</i> , of the fathers.	<i>der Häfen</i> , of the harbours.
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>den Vätern</i> , to the fathers.	<i>den Häfen</i> , to the harbours.
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>die Väter</i> , the fathers.	<i>die Häfen</i> , the harbours.

c. ENLARGED FORM.

<i>Sing. Nom.</i>	<i>das Land</i> , the country.
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>des Landes</i> , of the country.
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>dem Lande</i> , to the country.
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>das Land</i> , the country.
<i>Plur. Nom.</i>	<i>die Länder</i> , the countries.
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>der Länder</i> , of the countries.
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>den Ländern</i> , to the countries.
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>die Länder</i> , the countries.

SPECIMENS OF THE WEAK DECLENSION.

<i>Sing. Nom.</i>	der Graf, the count.	die Frau, the woman.
<i>Gen.</i>	des Grafen, of the count.	der Frau, of the woman.
<i>Dat.</i>	dem Grafen, to the count.	der Frau, to the woman.
<i>Acc.</i>	den Grafen, the count.	die Frau, the woman.
<i>Plur. Nom.</i>	die Grafen, the counts.	die Frauen, the women.
<i>Gen.</i>	der Grafen, of the counts.	der Frauen, of the women.
<i>Dat.</i>	den Grafen, to the counts.	den Frauen, to the women.
<i>Acc.</i>	die Grafen, the counts.	die Frauen, the women.

WORDS TO BE DECLINED AFTER THE ABOVE SPECIMENS.

(Those marked with an asterisk take a modified vowel in the plural.)

1. STRONG DECLENSION:—*a.* PRIMARY FORM—**der* Strom, the stream; *der* Stein, the stone; **der* Fuß, the foot; *das* Pferd, the horse; *das* Schaf, the sheep; **die* Hand, the hand; **die* Frucht, the fruit.—*b.* CONTRACTED FORM—**der* Bruder, the brother; *der* Lehrer, the teacher; **der* Apfel, the apple; **das* Kloster, the cloister; **der* Garten, the garden.—*c.* ENLARGED FORM—**das* Band, the ribbon; **das* Haus, the house; **das* Volk, the people; *das* Kind, the child; **der* Mann, the man.

2. WEAK DECLENSION:—*der* Mensch, the human being; *der* Narr, the fool; *der* Knabe, the boy; *die* Uhr, the watch; *die* Blume, the flower; *die* Nadel, the needle; *die* Mauer, the wall.

MODIFICATION OF VOWEL IN THE PLURAL.

§ 79. The modification of the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, and of the diphthong *au*, takes place in the formation of the plural of words of the strong declension only.

1. Monosyllables of the masculine and feminine genders declined according to the primary form, are subject to the modification of the vowel; as—*der* Sohn, plural *die* Söhne; *die* Kunst, plural *die* Künste.

The following masculines, among others, are excepted :—

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
der Arm, arm ;	die Arme.
" Docht, wick ;	" Dochte.
" Dolch, dagger ;	" Dolche.
" Halm, blade of grass ;	" Halme.
" Huf, hoof ;	" Hufe.
" Hund, dog ;	" Hunde.
" Laut, sound ;	" Laute.
" Pfad, path ;	" Pfade.
" Punkt, point ;	" Punkte.
" Schuh, shoe ;	" Schuhe.
" Stoff, material ;	" Stoffe.
" Tag, day ;	" Tage.
" Thron, throne ;	" Throne.

Note.

Neuter substantives, if declined after the primary form of the strong declension, do not undergo any change of vowel ; as—das Pfund, pound, plur. die Pfunde ; das Thor, gate, plur. die Thore ; das Schaf, sheep, plur. die Schafe.

2. The following substantives of the contracted form are also subject to the modification of the vowel :—

a. MASCULINES.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
der Acker, field ;	die Acker.
" Bruder, brother ;	" Brüder.
" Hammer, hammer ;	" Hämmer.
" Schwager, brother-in-law ;	" Schwäger.
" Vater, father ;	" Väter.
der Boden, bottom, loft ;	die Böden.
" Faden, thread ;	" Fäden.
" Garten, garden ;	" Gärten.
" Graben, ditch ;	" Gräben.
" Hafen, harbour ;	" Häfen.
" Laden, shop ;	" Läden.
" Ofen, stove ;	" Öfen.
" Schaden, damage ;	" Schäden.
der Apfel, apple ;	die Äpfel.
" Hammel, wether ;	" Hammel.
" Handel, affair, quarrel ;	" Händel.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
der Mantel, cloak ;	die Mäntel.
" Nagel, nail ;	" Nägel.
" Sattel, saddle ;	" Sättel.
" Schnabel, beak ;	" Schnäbel.
" Vogel, bird ;	" Vögel.

b. FEMININES—

die Mutter, mother ;	die Mütter.
" Tochter, daughter ;	" Töchter.

c. NEUTER—

das Kloster, cloister ;	die Klöster.
-------------------------	--------------

All other words of the contracted form leave the vowel unchanged.

3. All substantives of the enlarged form are subject to the modification of the vowel ; as—das Land, country, plur. die Länder ; das Volk, people, plur. die Völker.

SUBSTANTIVES DECLINED AFTER THE STRONG DECLENSION.

§ 80. Masculine and neuter substantives, in general, are declined after the strong declension.

§ 81. By the contracted form of the strong declension, in particular, are declined—

1. All masculine and neuter substantives ending in *el*, *er*, *en*, *em*, *chen*, *lein*, *sel*.

2. All neuter substantives having the augment *ge*, and ending in *e*.

§ 82. By the enlarged form of the strong declension, in particular, are declined—

1. The following few masculines :—

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
der Geist, spirit ;	die Geister.
" Gott, God ;	" Götter.
" Leib, body ;	" Leiber.
" Mann, man ;	" Männer.
" Ort, place ;	" Oerter.
" Rand, edge ;	" Ränder.
" Wald, forest ;	" Wälder.
" Wurm, worm ;	" Würmer.

2. The following neuter substantives of one syllable:—

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
das Amt, office ;	die Aemter.
" Bad, bath ;	" Bäder.
" Band, ribbon ;	" Bänder.
" Bild, picture ;	" Bilder.
" Blatt, leaf ;	" Blätter.
" Brett, board ;	" Bretter.
" Buch, book ;	" Bücher.
" Dach, roof ;	" Dächer.
" Dorf, village ;	" Dörfer.
" Ei, egg ;	" Eier.
" Fach, compartment ;	" Fächer.
" Faß, cask ;	" Fässer.
" Feld, field ;	" Felder.
" Geld, money ;	" Gelder.
" Glas, glass ;	" Gläser.
" Glied, limb ;	" Glieder.
" Grab, grave ;	" Gräber.
" Gras, grass ;	" Gräser.
" Gut, estate ;	" Güter.
" Haupt, head ;	" Häupter.
" Haus, house ;	" Häuser.
" Holz, wood ;	" Hölzer.
" Horn, horn ;	" Hörner.
" Huhn, fowl ;	" Hühner.
" Kalb, calf ;	" Kälber.
" Kind, child ;	" Kinder.
" Kleid, garment ;	" Kleider.
" Korn, grain ;	" Körner.
" Kraut, herb ;	" Kräuter.
" Lamm, lamb ;	" Lämmer.
" Land, country ;	" Länder.
" Licht, light ;	" Lichter.
" Lied, song ;	" Lieder.
" Loch, hole ;	" Löcher.
" Maul, mouth ;	" Mäuler.
" Nest, nest ;	" Nester.
" Pfand, pledge ;	" Pfänder.
" Rad, wheel ;	" Räder.
" Rind, neat ;	" Rinder.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
daß Schild, sign-board ;	die Schilder.
" Schloß, lock ;	" Schlösser.
" Schwert, sword ;	" Schwerter.
" Thal, valley ;	" Thäler.
" Tuch, cloth ;	" Tücher.
" Volk, people ;	" Völker.
" Weib, woman ;	" Weiber.
" Wort, word ;	" Wörter.

3. The following six neuters with the augment ge:—

daß Gemach, apartment ;	die Gemächer.
" Gemüth, mind ;	" Gemüther.
" Geschlecht, sex ;	" Geschlechter.
" Gesicht, face ;	" Gesichter.
" Gespenst, spectre ;	" Gespenster.
" Gewand, garment ;	" Gewänder.

4. All substantives ending in thum; as—daß Fürstenthum, principality, plural die Fürstenthümer; der Irrthum, error, plural die Irrthümer.

§ 83. Only a small number of feminine substantives follow the strong declension, the singular remaining unchanged, however, according to § 77.

1. By the primary form are declined—

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
die Art, axe ;	die Aerte.
" Bank, bench ;	" Bänke.
" Braut, bride ;	" Bräute.
" Brust, breast ;	" Brüste.
" Faust, fist ;	" Fäuste.
" Frucht, fruit ;	" Früchte.
" Gans, goose ;	" Gänse.
" Gruft, grave ;	" Grüste.
" Hand, hand ;	" Hände.
" Haut, skin ;	" Häute.
" Kraft, strength ;	" Kräfte.
" Kuh, cow ;	" Kühe.
" Kunst, art ;	" Künste.
" Laus, louse ;	" Läuse.
" Luft, air ;	" Lüfte.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
die Lust, desire ;	die Lüfte.
" Macht, power ;	" Mächte.
" Magd, maid-servant ;	" Mägde.
" Maus, mouse ;	" Mäuse.
" Nacht, night ;	" Nächte.
" Naht, seam ;	" Nähte.
" Noth, need ;	" Nöthe.
" Nuß, nut ;	" Nüsse.
" Stadt, town ;	" Städte.
" Wand, wall ;	" Wände.
" Wurst, sausage ;	" Würste.

And those ending in *niß*.

2. By the contracted form are declined—

die Mutter, mother ;	die Mütter.
" Tochter, daughter ;	" Töchter.

SUBSTANTIVES DECLINED AFTER THE WEAK DECLENSION.

§ 84. Feminine substantives generally follow the weak declension. The exceptions are mentioned in the preceding paragraph. The practice of leaving feminine substantives unchanged in the singular has been referred to in § 77.

Feminines ending in *in* take the usual termination *en* in the plural, but at the same time double the *n* of the derivative suffix ; as—*Hirtin*, shepherdess, plur. *Hirtinnen* ; *Heldin*, heroine, plur. *Heldinnen* ; *Göttin*, goddess, plur. *Göttinnen*.

§ 85. Some masculine substantives likewise follow the weak declension ; namely—

1. All those that end in *e*. Examples :—*der Bote*, messenger ; *der Knabe*, boy ; *der Gefährte*, companion ; *der Löwe*, lion ; *der Hase*, hare. Also the names of nations ending in *e*, and some ending in *er* and *ar* ; e.g.—*der Britte*, Briton ; *der Preuße*, Prussian ; *der Däne*, Dane ; *der Türfe*, Turk ; *der Mohr(e)*, Moor ; *der Baiar*, Bavarian ; *der Kaffer*, Kaffir ; *der Ungar*, Hungarian.

2. The following monosyllables :—

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
der Bär, bear ;	die Bären.
" Christ, Christian ;	" Christen.
" Fink, finch ;	" Finken.
" Fürst, prince ;	" Fürsten.
" Ged, fop ;	" Geden.
" Graf, count ;	" Grafen.
" Held, hero ;	" Helden.
" Herr, master ;	" Herren.
" Hirt, herdsman ;	" Hirten.
" Mensch, man ;	" Menschen.
" Narr, fool ;	" Narren.
" Nerv, nerve ;	" Nerven.
" Ochß, ox ;	" Ochsen.
" Prinz, prince ;	" Prinzen.
" Thor, fool ;	" Thoren.

And the compounds—

der Hagestolz, old bachelor ;	die Hagestolzen.
" Vorfahr, ancestor ;	" Vorfahren.

X EXERCISE XIX.

My father has three¹ sons and three daughters. I have two² brothers and two sisters. The father's brother is a merchant.³ [£]The children go to school.⁴ They have got⁵ new⁶ dresses⁷ and cloaks.⁸ The palace⁹ of the king¹⁰ is [being] guarded¹¹ by soldiers.¹² Have you been in¹³ the country?¹⁴ I am a lover (say, friend) of [the] country-life.¹⁵ The gardener¹⁶ lops¹⁷ the trees¹⁸ and hedges.¹⁹ The leaves²⁰ of the trees are falling.²¹ The gardens²² are planted²³ with²⁴ trees and flowers.²⁵ The bird²⁶ sits upon²⁷

¹ Three, drei. ² Two, zwei. ³ Merchant, Kaufmann. ⁴ To school, in die Schule. ⁵ To get, bekommen. ⁶ New (plur.), neue. ⁷ Dress, Kleid. ⁸ Cloak, Mantel. ⁹ The palace, der Palast. ¹⁰ King, König. ¹¹ To guard, bewachen. ¹² By soldiers, von Soldaten. ¹³ In, auf, with the dative. ¹⁴ Country, Land. ¹⁵ Country-life, Sandleben. ¹⁶ Gardener, Gärtner. ¹⁷ To lop, beschneiden. ¹⁸ Tree, Baum. ¹⁹ Hedge, Hecke. ²⁰ Leaf, Blatt. ²¹ To fall, abfallen. ²² Garden, Garten. ²³ To plant, bepflanzen. ²⁴ With, mit, governs the dative. ²⁵ Flower, Blume. ²⁶ Bird, Vogel. ²⁷ Upon, auf, with the dative.

the tree. The roof²⁸ of the building²⁹ is being repaired.³⁰ I am acquainted³¹ with the clergyman³² of the village.³³ The mother of the girl is a sempstress.³⁴ We shall take a walk³⁵ with a friend. The title-page³⁶ of the book is torn out.³⁷ They waved³⁸ their (say, the) hats.³⁹ Many⁴⁰ ships⁴¹ are in⁴² the harbour.⁴³ I love the fine⁴⁴ arts.⁴⁵ I have found a key.⁴⁶ The rooms⁴⁷ of the house are too small.⁴⁸ The walls⁴⁹ of the room must be cleaned.⁵⁰ The nuts⁵¹ are ripe. The days are increasing.⁵² The shoemaker⁵³ has sent⁵⁴ a pair⁵⁵ of shoes. The dogs pursue⁵⁶ a hare.⁵⁷

- É. ²⁸ Roof, Dach. ²⁹ Building, Gebäude. ³⁰ To repair, ausbessern. ³¹ Acquainted, bekannt; goes to the end of the sentence. ³² Clergyman, Pfarrer. ³³ Village, Dorf. ³⁴ Sempstress, Nähterin. ³⁵ To take a walk, spazieren gehen. ³⁶ Title-page, Titelblatt. ³⁷ To tear out, ausreißen. ³⁸ To wave, schwenken. ³⁹ Hat, Hut. ⁴⁰ Many, viele. ⁴¹ Ship, Schiff. ⁴² In, in, with the dative. ⁴³ Harbour, Hafen. ⁴⁴ Fine (plur.), schönen. ⁴⁵ Art, Kunst. ⁴⁶ Key, Schlüssel. ⁴⁷ Room, Zimmer. ⁴⁸ Too small, zu klein. ⁴⁹ Wall, Wand. ⁵⁰ To clean, reinigen. ⁵¹ Nut, Nuss. ⁵² To increase, zunehmen. ⁵³ Shoemaker, Schuhmacher. ⁵⁴ To send, schicken. ⁵⁵ Pair, Paar. ⁵⁶ To pursue, verfolgen. ⁵⁷ Hare, Hase.

EXERCISE XX.

Do you see the houses of the town? Bring a knife¹ and a fork.² Bring three knives, three forks, and three spoons.³ I want⁴ a plate⁵ and a spoon. The glasses⁶ stand upon⁷ the table.⁸ The eggs⁹ are rotten.¹⁰ Miss S. sang a few¹¹ songs.¹² I shall order¹³ twelve¹⁴ bottles¹⁵ of beer.¹⁶ I have drunk two cups¹⁷ of tea.¹⁸ A beggar¹⁹ is at²⁰ the door.²¹ I have read it in²² a newspaper.²³ I gave [to] the woman a charity.²⁴ Has (say, is) the boy come from²⁵ [the] school? The boys have bathed in the river.²⁶ I have sent²⁷ the messenger²⁸ away.²⁹ He has given³⁰ [to] his³¹ nephew³²

- ¹ Knife, Messer. ² Fork, Gabel. ³ Spoon, Löffel. ⁴ To want, brauchen. ⁵ Plate, Teller. ⁶ Glass, Glas. ⁷ Upon, auf, with the dative. ⁸ Table, Tisch. ⁹ Egg, Ei. ¹⁰ Rotten, faul. ¹¹ A few, einige. ¹² Song, Lied. ¹³ To order, bestellen. ¹⁴ Twelve, zwölf. ¹⁵ Bottle, Flasche. ¹⁶ Beer, Bier. ¹⁷ Cup, Tasse. ¹⁸ Tea, Thee. ¹⁹ Beggar, Bettler. ²⁰ At, an, with the dative. ²¹ Door, Thür. ²² In, in, with the dative. ²³ Newspaper, Zeitung. ²⁴ Charity, Almosen, n. ²⁵ From, aus, governs the dative. ²⁶ River, Fluss. ²⁷ To send, schicken. ²⁸ Messenger, Bote. ²⁹ Away, fort. ³⁰ To give, schenken. ³¹ To his, seinem. ³² Nephew, Neffe.

a watch.³³ Horses³⁴ and oxen³⁵ are [being] used³⁶ for ploughing.³⁷ Have you seen the count³⁸ and the countess?³⁹ The life⁴⁰ of [the] man⁴¹ is short.⁴² The watches go wrong.⁴³ The sister is expecting⁴⁴ some⁴⁵ friends.⁴⁶ The walls⁴⁷ of the castle⁴⁸ lie in ruins.⁴⁹ I have eaten some oysters.⁵⁰ He shrugged⁵¹ his (say, the) shoulders.⁵² The Britons⁵³ have a large⁵⁴ fleet.⁵⁵ The Scandinavian⁵⁶ islands⁵⁷ are [being] inhabited⁵⁸ by⁵⁹ the Danes,⁶⁰ Swedes,⁶¹ and Norwegians.⁶²

- ³³ Watch, Uhr. ³⁴ Horse, Pferd. ³⁵ Ox, Ochse. ³⁶ To use, gebrauchen.
³⁷ For ploughing, zum Pflügen. ³⁸ Count, Graf. ³⁹ Countess, Gräfin.
⁴⁰ Life, Leben. ⁴¹ Man, Mensch. ⁴² Short, kurz. ⁴³ Wrong, falsch. ⁴⁴ To expect, erwarten. ⁴⁵ Some, einige. ⁴⁶ Friend, Freundin. ⁴⁷ Wall, Mauer.
⁴⁸ Castle, Burg. ⁴⁹ Lie in ruins, sind verfallen. ⁵⁰ Oyster, Auster. ⁵¹ To shrug, zucken. ⁵² Shoulder, Achsel, f. ⁵³ Briton, Britte. ⁵⁴ Large, große.
⁵⁵ Fleet, Flotte. ⁵⁶ Scandinavian (plur.), Scandinavischen. ⁵⁷ Island, Insel.
⁵⁸ To inhabit, bewohnen. ⁵⁹ By, von, governs the dative. ⁶⁰ Dane, Däne.
⁶¹ Swede, Schwede. ⁶² Norwegian, Norweger.

PECULIARITIES IN DECLENSION.

§ 86. The following masculine substantives are declined by the weak declension through singular and plural, but take in the genitive singular the strong termination *s* in addition to the weak termination *n*; as—Buchstaben*s*, Frieden*s*, &c.:—

— der Buchstabe, letter of the alphabet ;	der Haufe, heap ; —
— " Friede, peace ;	" Name, name ; —
— " Funke, spark ;	" Same, seed ;
— " Gedanke, thought ;	" Schade, injury ; —
— " Glaube, faith.	" Wille, will. —

The neuter das Herz, heart, is similarly declined, except that it remains unchanged in the accusative singular:—gen. des Herzens, dat. dem Herzen, acc. das Herz ; plur. die Herzen.

§ 87. The following masculine and neuter substantives follow the strong declension in the singular, but the weak in the plural:—

1. MASCULINES:—

der Ahn, ancestor ;	der Dorn, thorn ;
" Bauer, peasant ;	" Forst, forest ;

der Gevatter, godfather ;	der Sporn, spur ;
— " Lorbeer, laurel ;	— " Staat, state ;
— " Mast, mast of a ship ;	— " Stachel, sting ;
— " Nachbar, neighbour ;	— " Stiefel, boot ;
— " Pantoffel, slipper ;	— " Strahl, ray ;
— " Schmerz, pain ;	— " Unterthan, subject ;
— " See, lake ;	— " Vetter, cousin.

2. NEUTERS :—

— daß Auge, eye ;	— daß Hemd, shirt ;
— " Bett, bed ;	— " Ohr, ear.
— " Ende, end ;	

\$90.
\$1. 2.

§ 88. The following substantives have a double plural, with a different signification for each :—

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	
daß Band ;	Bänder, ribbons ;	Bande, ties.
die Bank ;	Bänke, benches ;	Banken, commercial banks.
daß Gesicht ;	Gesichter, faces ;	Gesichte, visions.
der Laden ;	Läden, shops ;	Laden, shutters.
daß Land ;	Länder, separate countries ;	Lande, the various parts, provinces, or districts of the same kingdom or empire.
daß Licht ;	Lichte, candles ;	Lichter, lights.
der Ort ;	Orter, (single) places ;	Orte, places (collectively).
der Strauß ;	Strauße or Straußen, ostriches ;	Strauße, nosegays.
daß Wort ;	Wörter, single words ;	Worte, coherent words.
der Zoll ;	Zölle, inches ;	Zölle, tolls.

Note.

Substantives compounded with Mann form the plural by the collective Leute, when used in a collective or general sense ; as—Arbeitsleute, work-people ; Bergleute, miners ; Gutsleute, noblemen ; Eheleute, married people ; Fuhrleute, wagoners ; Handelsleute, trades-people, shopkeepers ; Kaufleute, merchants ; Landleute, country-people ; Leute, people of the same country ; Mietheleute, lodgers. But the ordinary form Männer must be employed if persons are considered as individuals, not as a class ; as—Biedermänner, honest, or loyal men ; Ehrenmänner, men of honour ; Staatsmänner, statesmen ; or if a sexual distinction is to be made, as in

Ghemänner, husbands; Miethsmänner, male lodgers. With some words of this description, however, the plural *Leute* has become so prevalent, that even the best authors use it under all circumstances; *e. g.*—*Kaufleute*, *Gesleute*, and others.

EXERCISE XXI.

John¹ is learning the letters. The years of [the] peace are past.² Do you know³ the name of the author?⁴ Freedom⁵ of [the] will is a privilege⁶ of [the] man.⁷ I admire⁸ the boldness⁹ of the thought. Can you guess¹⁰ my¹¹ thoughts? The ancestors of the family had estates¹² in Germany. The blossom¹³ of the laurel is very pretty.¹⁴ We are neighbours. The boots must be soled.¹⁵ The beauty¹⁶ of the lake is beyond description.¹⁷ The light of the eye is an inestimable gift¹⁸ of God. [The] man has two ears and one mouth.¹⁹ The shirts are not yet²⁰ ironed.²¹ The banks are closed²² on²³ holidays.²⁴ The benches are occupied.²⁵ The ribbons are green.²⁶ Shut²⁷ the shutters. The shops are to be let.²⁸ I have bought two nosegays. These²⁹ are two French³⁰ words. Her³¹ words were daggers.³² The work-people get³³ their wages³⁴ weekly.³⁵ The lodgers have (say, are) removed.³⁶ Several³⁷ merchants have failed.³⁸ They are men of honour.

¹ John, Johann. ² Past, vorüber. ³ To know, wissen. ⁴ Author, Verfasser. ⁵ Freedom, Freiheit. ⁶ Privilege, Vorrecht. ⁷ Man, Mensch. ⁸ To admire, bewundern. ⁹ Boldness, Kühnheit. ¹⁰ To guess, errathen. ¹¹ My (plur.), meine. ¹² Estate, Besizung. ¹³ Blossom, Blüthe. ¹⁴ Pretty, hübsch. ¹⁵ To sole, besohlen. ¹⁶ Beauty, Schönheit. ¹⁷ Beyond description, unbeschreiblich. ¹⁸ An inestimable gift, eine unschätzbare Gabe. ¹⁹ One mouth (acc.), einen Mund. ²⁰ Not yet, noch nicht. ²¹ To iron, plätten. ²² To close, schließen. ²³ On, an, with the dative. ²⁴ Holiday, Feiertag. ²⁵ To occupy, besetzen. ²⁶ Green, grün. ²⁷ To shut, zumachen. ²⁸ To be let, zu vermischen. ²⁹ These, dies. ³⁰ French (plur.), französische. ³¹ Her (plur.), ihre. ³² Dagger, Dolch. ³³ To get, bekommen. ³⁴ Their wages, ihr Lohn. ³⁵ Weekly, wöchentlich. ³⁶ To remove, ausziehen. ³⁷ Several, mehrere. ³⁸ To fail, falliren.

DECLENSION OF FOREIGN SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 89. The following foreign substantives take the strong declension both in the singular and plural:—

1. Most names of things of the masculine and neuter

genders ; as—*der Instinkt, das Monument, &c.* Hospital has in the plural *Hospitäler* ; Regiment has *Regimenter*.

2. Those names of male persons which end in *al, ar, an, er, ier, on, and or* (with the accent on the last syllable ; as—*Major, major*). Likewise—*Abt*, abbot ; *Probst*, prebendary ; *Papst*, pope ; *Bischof*, bishop ; plural *Äbte, Präbste, Päpste, Bischöfe*.

§ 90. The following are declined after the strong declension in the singular, after the weak in the plural :—

1. Those names of male persons which end in an unaccented *or* ; as—*Professor*, gen. *Professor's*, plur. *Professoren*.

2. Those neuter substantives which had originally, or still have, the Latin termination *ium* or *um*, and also those neuters which end in *al* or *il* (Latin *ale, ile*). These have in the plural *ien* or *en* respectively. For example :—*Evangelium*, gospel, gen. *Evangelium's*, plur. *Evangelien* ; *Individuum*, individual, gen. *Individuum's*, plur. *Individuen* ; *Material*, material, gen. *Material's*, plur. *Materialien* ; *Fossil*, fossil, gen. *Fossil's*, plur. *Fossilien*.

3. The following masculines :—*Diamant, Fasan, Konsul, Präsekt, Psalm, Rubin*, and the neuters *Insekt, Pronom, Statut, Verb*.

§ 91. The following are declined by the weak declension both in the singular and plural (the feminines, however, remaining unchanged in the singular) :—

1. All feminine substantives.

2. All appellations of male persons, with the exception of those above mentioned.

3. These masculines :—*Dufat, Elephant, Konsonant, Komet, Planet, Quotient*, and others of a similar kind.

§ 92. Masculine and neuter substantives which belong to other modern languages, and have retained their original foreign form unchanged, take *s* in the genitive singular, and likewise *s* in the plural ; as—*Lords, Genies, Chiefs, Fonds, Details, Banquiers, Acteurs, Porträts, Solos, Casinos*.

EXERCISE XXII.

The town is rich¹ in monuments.² I despair³ of the solution⁴ of the problem.⁵ The hospitals⁶ are maintained⁷ by⁸ the inhabitants⁹ of the town. The manager¹⁰ of the hospital has gained¹¹ [for himself¹²] the confidence¹³ and [the] esteem¹⁴ of the public.¹⁵ The monk¹⁶ belongs¹⁷ to the order¹⁸ of the Dominicans.¹⁹ A Prussian regiment²⁰ consists²¹ of three battalions.²² Of how many²³ regiments does an army-corps²⁴ consist? Six²⁵ officers²⁶ of the regiment are on leave.²⁷ The highest dignitaries²⁸ of the English church²⁹ are called³⁰ archbishops.³¹ The professors of the university³² have held a meeting³³ and expelled³⁴ several students.³⁵ The four³⁶ gospels³⁷ contain³⁸ the history³⁹ of the life of Christ.⁴⁰ We have read the fifth chapter⁴¹ of the Gospel according to Matthew.⁴² He collects⁴³ fossils.⁴⁴ The kingdom⁴⁵ of Prussia⁴⁶ has six universities. Each⁴⁷ university has four faculties.⁴⁸ Various⁴⁹ theologians⁵⁰ have translated⁵¹ and interpreted⁵² the book of the prophet⁵³ Isaiah.⁵⁴ The planets⁵⁵ receive⁵⁶ their light⁵⁷ from⁵⁸ the sun. Messrs⁵⁹ A. and B.

¹ Rich in, reich an, with the dative. ² Monument, Monument, n.
³ To despair of, verzweifeln an, with the dative. ⁴ Solution, Auflösung.
⁵ Problem, Problem, n. ⁶ Hospital, Hospital, n. ⁷ To maintain, unterhalten. ⁸ By, von, with the dative. ⁹ Inhabitant, Einwohner. ¹⁰ Manager, Vorsteher. ¹¹ To gain, erwerben. ¹² For himself, sich. ¹³ Confidence, Vertrauen, n. ¹⁴ Esteem, Achtung. ¹⁵ Public, Publikum, n. ¹⁶ Monk, Mönch. ¹⁷ To belong, gehören. ¹⁸ To the order, zum Orden. ¹⁹ Dominican, Dominikaner. ²⁰ A Prussian regiment, ein Preussisches Regiment.
²¹ To consist of, bestehen aus, with the dative. ²² Battalion, Bataillon, n.
²³ Of how many, aus wie vielen (dat.) ²⁴ Army-corps, Armee-corps, n.
²⁵ Six, sechs. ²⁶ Officer, Offizier. ²⁷ On leave, auf Urlaub. ²⁸ The highest dignitaries, die höchsten Geistlichen. ²⁹ Of the English church, der englischen Kirche. ³⁰ To call, nennen. ³¹ Archbishop, Erzbischof. ³² University, Universität, f. ³³ Meeting, Konferenz, f. ³⁴ To expel, relegiren. ³⁵ Student, Student. ³⁶ Four, vier. ³⁷ Gospel, Evangelium, n. ³⁸ To contain, enthalten. ³⁹ History, Geschichte. ⁴⁰ Of Christ, Christi. ⁴¹ The fifth chapter, das fünfte Kapitel. ⁴² According to Matthew, Matthäi. ⁴³ To collect, sammeln. ⁴⁴ Fossil, Fossil, n. ⁴⁵ Kingdom, Königreich. ⁴⁶ Prussia, Preußen. ⁴⁷ Each, jede. ⁴⁸ Faculty, Fakultät. ⁴⁹ Various (plur.), verschiedene. ⁵⁰ Theologian, Theolog. ⁵¹ To translate, übersetzen; see § 62, note. ⁵² To interpret, erklären. ⁵³ Prophet, Prophet. ⁵⁴ Isaiah, Jesaias. ⁵⁵ Planet, Planet, m. ⁵⁶ To receive, empfangen. ⁵⁷ Their light, ihr Licht. ⁵⁸ From, von, with the dative. ⁵⁹ Messrs, die Herren.

are bankers.⁶⁰ I am acquainted⁶¹ with⁶² the principals⁶³ of several⁶⁴ commercial houses⁶⁵ in London.

⁶⁰ Banker, Banquier; see § 92. ⁶¹ Acquainted, bekannt; is removed to the end. ⁶² With, mit; governs the dative. ⁶³ Principal, Chef. ⁶⁴ Of several, mehrerer. ⁶⁵ Commercial house, Handelshaus.

DECLENSION OF PROPER NAMES.

§ 93. Those proper names which are never used without an article—as the names of rivers, seas, lakes, mountains, and forests, and the names of countries of the masculine or feminine gender—follow entirely the rules given for the declension of common names. But with regard to those proper names which are commonly used without an article—that is, names of persons, places, and neuter names of countries—the following rules are observed:—

§ 94. They take in the genitive the strong termination *s*; as—Karl, Karl*s*; Friedrich, Friedrich*s*; Elisabeth, Elisabeth*s*; Adelheid, Adelheid*s*; Amerika, Amerik*a*s; Berlin, Berl*i*n*s*.

§ 95. Names of females ending in *e* follow the weak declension, but take in the genitive the mixed termination *ens*; as—Sophie, gen. Sophi*e*n*s*, dat. and acc. Sophi*e*n.

§ 96. Foreign names ending in a sibilant, especially such of them as have an unaccented termination, are not declined, and the case is pointed out by the definite article; for instance—das Heer des Xerxes, the army of Xerxes; die Schriften des Aristoteles, the writings of Aristotle; das Schwert der Themis, the sword of Themis; dem Paulus, to Paul.

The same expedient is sometimes had recourse to, even with names which can be inflected in the genitive; *e. g.*—die Briefe des Cicero (or Cicero's Briefe), the epistles of Cicero. With such names as do not take any inflectional termination in the dative, it is a very common practice to point out the case by means of the article, especially if this may serve to avoid ambiguities; as in—er zieht Göthe dem Schiller vor, he prefers Goethe to Schiller.

§ 97. Proper names of countries and places come under the general rule—that is, they take *s* in the genitive. But

when, owing to the last consonant being a sibilant, the genitive cannot take the termination *s*, or whenever another case requires to be used, a common name is placed in apposition to the proper name; as—*die Merkwürdigkeiten der Stadt Paris*, the sights of the city of Paris; *der Befehlshaber der Festung Mainz*, the commander of the fortress of Mayence; *dem Königreich Spanien ist Frankreich überlegen*, France is superior in power to the kingdom of Spain. The relation of the genitive can, in such cases, be expressed by the preposition *von*; as in—*die Bevölkerung von Paris*, the population of Paris; *die Lage von Cadix*, the situation of Cadiz.

Note.

The latter mode of expressing the relation of the genitive is not limited to names ending in a sibilant, but is often employed with names of places, and especially of countries generally, if the name follows the substantive by which it is governed; *e. g.*—*die Umgegend von Frankfurt*, the environs of Frankfort; *die Königin von England*, the Queen of England; *der Kaiser von Rußland*, the Emperor of Russia.

§ 98. When the name of a person is preceded by an article, with or without an adjective, it is not declined; as—*der Schiller, des Schiller, dem Schiller, den Schiller*; *der große Göthe, des großen Göthe, dem großen Göthe, den großen Göthe*. This rule is only departed from when a name in the genitive case, and preceded by an adjective, is placed before the word by which it is governed; as—*des großen Friedrich's Thaten*, great Frederick's deeds; *des berühmten Neander's Werke*, the works of the celebrated Neander.

EXERCISE XXIII.

The Aar,¹ the Moselle,² the Maas,³ the Neckar,⁴ and the Main,⁵ are tributaries⁶ of the Rhine.⁷ The Brocken⁸ forms⁹ the centre¹⁰ of the Harz Mountains.¹¹ Have you been in [the] Switzerland?¹² Mayence¹³ is one¹⁴ of the most ancient¹⁵ towns of Germany. Sophy's¹⁶ brother has

¹ The Aar, *die Aar*. ² The Moselle, *die Mosel*. ³ The Maas, *die Maas*.
⁴ The Neckar, *der Neckar*. ⁵ The Main, *der Main*. ⁶ Tributary, *Nebenfluß*. ⁷ The Rhine, *der Rhein*. ⁸ The Brocken, *der Brocken*. ⁹ To form, *bilden*. ¹⁰ Centre, *Mittelpunkt*. ¹¹ The Harz Mountains, *der Harz* (sing.)
¹² Switzerland, *die Schweiz* (dat.) ¹³ Mayence, *Mainz*. ¹⁴ One (fem.),
eine. ¹⁵ Of the most ancient, *der ältesten*. ¹⁶ Sophy, *Sophie*.

married¹⁷ Frederick's¹⁸ sister. Do you know¹⁹ Charlotte's mother? Xerxes, king of Persia,²⁰ was the son and successor²¹ of [the] Darius²² Hystaspis. We are translating the tales²³ of [the] Musaeus into English.²⁴ I prefer²⁵ Schiller to [the] Goethe. The garrison²⁶ of the fortress²⁷ of Mayence amounts²⁸ to six thousand men.²⁹ The population³⁰ of London is greater³¹ than³² the population of Paris. The situation³³ of Coblenz is very charming.³⁴ Vienna³⁵ is the capital³⁶ of Austria.³⁷

¹⁷ To marry, heirathen; is a weak verb. ¹⁸ Frederick, Friedrich. ¹⁹ To know, kennen. ²⁰ Persia, Persien. ²¹ Successor, Nachfolger. ²² Darius, Darios. ²³ Tale, Märchen. ²⁴ Into English, in's Englische. ²⁵ To prefer, vorziehen. ²⁶ Garrison, Besatzung. ²⁷ Fortress, Festung. ²⁸ To amount to, betragen. ²⁹ Six thousand men, sechs tausend Mann. ³⁰ Population, Bevölkerung. ³¹ Greater, größer. ³² Than, als. ³³ Situation, Lage. ³⁴ Charming, reizend. ³⁵ Vienna, Wien. ³⁶ Capital, Hauptstadt. ³⁷ Austria, Oestreich.

XV.

THE DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 99. Adjectives are words which qualify substantives. When an adjective is *asserted* of a person or thing, so that it forms the *predicate* of a sentence, it remains unchanged. For example:—daß Pferd ist jung, the horse is young. Die Bäume sind grün, the trees are green. Die Kirschen werden reif, the cherries become ripe. Er ist reich gewesen, he has been rich.

When an adjective stands in an *attributive* connection with a substantive, it is declined—that is, it is made to agree with the substantive in gender, number, and case. For example:—ein junges Pferd, a young horse; die grünen Bäume, the green trees; reife Kirschen, ripe cherries; ein reicher Mann, a rich man.

Most adjectives can be used in a predicative as well as an attributive connection.

§ 100. Every adjective which can be used in an attributive connection has two forms of declension, which, like the declensions of substantives, are called the 'strong' and the 'weak.' The strong declension is more perfect than the

weak, being subject to a greater variety of inflectional changes. The former corresponds with the declension of the definite article, the latter bears a resemblance to the weak declension of substantives.

TABULAR VIEW OF THE TERMINATIONS.

STRONG DECLENSION.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.
MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	ALL THREE GENDERS.
<i>Nom.</i> er,	e,	eß,	e.
<i>Gen.</i> eß (en),	er,	eß (en),	er.
<i>Dat.</i> en,	er,	em,	en.
<i>Acc.</i> en,	e,	eß,	e.

WEAK DECLENSION.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.
MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	ALL THREE GENDERS.
<i>Nom.</i> e,	e,	e,	en.
<i>Gen.</i> en,	en,	en,	en.
<i>Dat.</i> en,	en,	en,	en.
<i>Acc.</i> en,	e,	e,	en.

PARADIGM.

STRONG DECLENSION.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.
MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	ALL THREE GENDERS.
<i>Nom.</i> guter,	gute,	guteß,	gute.
<i>Gen.</i> guteß (en),	guter,	guteß (en),	guter.
<i>Dat.</i> gutem,	guter,	gutem,	guten.
<i>Acc.</i> guten,	gute,	guteß,	gute.

WEAK DECLENSION.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.
MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	ALL THREE GENDERS.
<i>Nom.</i> gute,	gute,	gute,	guten.
<i>Gen.</i> guten.	guten,	guten,	guten.
<i>Dat.</i> guten,	guten,	guten,	guten.
<i>Acc.</i> guten,	gute,	gute,	guten.

Notes.

1. In the genitive singular of the masculine and neuter genders of the strong declension, the weak termination *en* is now generally adopted in the place of the strong termination *es*.

2. Adjectives ending in one of the syllables *er*, *el*, *en*, when declined, commonly lose the vowel *e* of these syllables; as *ein* *maçter* Mann, a brave man; *eine* *edle* That, a noble action; *ein* *seltner* Vogel, a curious bird.

3. The adjective *hoch*, high, when declined, changes *ch* into *h*; as in *ein* *höher* Berg, a high mountain.

§ 101. An adjective follows the strong declension when it is not preceded by any article, pronoun, or numeral, or when preceded by an article, pronoun, or numeral which has no inflectional termination. For instance:—*guter* Wein, good wine; *schöner* Wetter, fine weather; *reine* Kleider, clean dresses; *ein* *ebner* Weg, an even road; *mein* *lieber* Freund, my dear friend; *unser* *neuer* Haus, our new house.

An adjective follows the weak declension when it is preceded by an article, pronoun, or numeral, which shews by its strong termination the gender, number, and case of the substantive. For instance:—*der* *gute* Wein, the good wine; *des* *süßen* Weines, of the sweet wine; *das* *schöne* Wetter, the fine weather; *die* *reinen* Kleider, the clean dresses; *dieser* *ebne* Weg, this even road; *meine* *lieben* Freunde, my dear friends; *in* *unserm* *neuen* Hause, in our new house.

From this rule it is obvious that an adjective may follow the strong declension in one case, while it may require the weak in another, although preceded by the same article, pronoun, or numeral, according as the latter has a strong termination or not. For example, in the nominative *ein* *junger* Baum, a young tree, the adjective is in the strong declension, but in the genitive, dative, and accusative in the weak; namely—gen. *eines* *jungen* Baumes, dat. *einem* *jungen* Baume, acc. *einen* *jungen* Baum. Examples:—

Sing. Nom. *alter* Wein, old wine.

Gen. *alten* Weines, of old wine.

Dat. *altem* Weine, to old wine.

Acc. *alten* Wein, old wine.

Plur. Nom. *alte* Weine, old wines.

Gen. *alter* Weine, of old wines.

Dat. *alten* Weinen, to old wines.

Acc. *alte* Weine, old wines.

- Sing. Nom.* der junge Baum, the young tree.
Gen. des jungen Baumes, of the young tree.
Dat. dem jungen Baume, to the young tree.
Acc. den jungen Baum, the young tree.
- Plur. Nom.* die jungen Bäume, the young trees.
Gen. der jungen Bäume, of the young trees.
Dat. den jungen Bäumen, to the young trees.
Acc. die jungen Bäume, the young trees.
- Sing. Nom.* die schöne Kunst, the fine art.
Gen. der schönen Kunst, of the fine art.
Dat. der schönen Kunst, to the fine art.
Acc. die schöne Kunst, the fine art.
- Plur. Nom.* die schönen Künste, the fine arts.
Gen. der schönen Künste, of the fine arts.
Dat. den schönen Künsten, to the fine arts.
Acc. die schönen Künste, the fine arts.
- Sing. Nom.* dieses grüne Feld, this green field.
Gen. dieses grünen Feldes, of this green field.
Dat. diesem grünen Felde, to this green field.
Acc. dieses grüne Feld, this green field.
- Plur. Nom.* diese grünen Felder, these green fields.
Gen. dieser grünen Felder, of these green fields.
Dat. diesen grünen Feldern, to these green fields.
Acc. diese grünen Felder, these green fields.
- Sing. Nom.* ein gutes Buch, a good book.
Gen. eines guten Buches, of a good book.
Dat. einem guten Buche, to a good book.
Acc. ein gutes Buch, a good book.
- Plur. Nom.* gute Bücher, good books.
Gen. guter Bücher, of good books.
Dat. guten Büchern, to good books.
Acc. gute Bücher, good books.
- Sing. Nom.* meine liebe Schwester, my dear sister.
Gen. meiner lieben Schwester, of my dear sister.
Dat. meiner lieben Schwester, to my dear sister.
Acc. meine liebe Schwester, my dear sister.

Plur. Nom. meine lieben Schwestern, my dear sisters.

Gen. meiner lieben Schwestern, of my dear sisters.

Dat. meinen lieben Schwestern, to my dear sisters.

Acc. meine lieben Schwestern, my dear sisters.

FOR PRACTICE:—

Guter Wein, good wine; lieber Bruder, dear brother; liebes Kind, dear child; geliebte Schwester, beloved sister; der grüne Baum, the green tree; der breite Fluß, the broad river; die lange Straße, the long street; das junge Mädchen, the young girl; dieser neue Mantel, this new cloak; jenes große Faß, that large cask; ein weiser König, a wise king; ein kleiner Knabe, a little boy; eine große Stadt, a large town; ein trocknes Blatt, a dry leaf; mein lieber Freund, my dear friend; sein neues Buch, his new book.

EXERCISE XXIV.

Sweet¹ wine (nom.) Sweet wine (acc.) The good wine. To the good wine. Dear child. Dear children. Old² trees. The old trees. An old tree. This³ young⁴ tree. Of a young tree. Of young trees. To a broad⁵ river. This⁶ long⁷ street.⁸ Long streets. A new⁹ song.¹⁰ New songs. The young girls. Of a new cloak.¹¹ To large¹² casks.¹³ Wise¹⁴ king. The little¹⁵ boy (nom.) The little boy (acc.) Little boys. Of the large town. My¹⁶ dear friends. Of my¹⁷ dear friend. The water is cold.¹⁸ The horses are young. I have bought a young horse. The cherries¹⁹ have become ripe.²⁰ I like²¹ ripe cherries. The weather²² was fine.²³ It is fine weather. We are learning the French²⁴ language. I have ordered²⁵ [for myself²⁶] a new cloak. The rich²⁷ proprietor²⁸ of the large estate²⁹ is a charitable³⁰ man. The large estate will be sold.³¹ A faithful³² friend is a great³³ treasure.³⁴ He has lent³⁵ to an old friend a large

¹ Sweet, süß. ² Old, alt. ³ This (m.), dieser. ⁴ Young, jung. ⁵ Broad, breit. ⁶ This (f.), diese. ⁷ Long, lang. ⁸ Street, Straße. ⁹ New, neu. ¹⁰ Song, Lied. ¹¹ Cloak, Mantel. ¹² Large, groß. ¹³ Cask, Faß. ¹⁴ Wise, weise. ¹⁵ Little, klein. ¹⁶ My (pl.), meine. ¹⁷ Of my (m.), meines. ¹⁸ Cold, kalt. ¹⁹ Cherry, Kirsche. ²⁰ Ripe, reif. ²¹ I like, ich esse gern. ²² Weather, Wetter. ²³ Fine, schön. ²⁴ French, französisch. ²⁵ To order, bestellen. ²⁶ For myself, mir. ²⁷ Rich, reich. ²⁸ Proprietor, Besitzer. ²⁹ Estate, Landgut. ³⁰ Charitable, wohlthätig. ³¹ To sell, verkaufen. ³² Faithful, treu. ³³ Great, groß. ³⁴ Treasure, Schatz. ³⁵ To lend, leihen.

das Lied - die Lieder.
der Mantel.

sum of money.³⁶ We have a rich neighbour.³⁷ Our³⁸ rich neighbour has a numerous³⁹ family.⁴⁰ We climbed⁴¹ a high⁴² mountain. The public⁴³ library⁴⁴ is [being] managed⁴⁵ by⁴⁶ an able⁴⁷ librarian.⁴⁸ He has able assistants.⁴⁹ To whom⁵⁰ does this⁵¹ brown⁵² parasol⁵³ belong?⁵⁴ I wish⁵⁵ [to] you⁵⁶ a good morning.⁵⁷ He has a noble⁵⁸ heart. She is a modest⁵⁹ woman. These⁶⁰ are bitter⁶¹ almonds.⁶²

³⁶ Sum of money, Geldsumme. ³⁷ Neighbour, Nachbar. ³⁸ Our (m.), unser. ³⁹ Numerous, zahlreich. ⁴⁰ Family, Familie. ⁴¹ To climb, ersteigen. ⁴² High, hoch; see § 100, note 3. ⁴³ Public, öffentlich. ⁴⁴ Library, Bibliothek, f. ⁴⁵ To manage, verwalten. ⁴⁶ By, von, with the dative. ⁴⁷ Able, tüchtig. ⁴⁸ Librarian, Bibliothekar. ⁴⁹ Assistant, Gehülfe. ⁵⁰ To whom, wem. ⁵¹ This (m.), dieser. ⁵² Brown, braun. ⁵³ Parasol, Sonnenschirm. ⁵⁴ To belong, gehören. ⁵⁵ To wish, wünschen. ⁵⁶ To you, Ihnen. ⁵⁷ Morning, Morgen. ⁵⁸ Noble, edel; see § 100, note 2. ⁵⁹ Modest, bescheiden. ⁶⁰ These, diese. ⁶¹ Bitter, bitter. ⁶² Almond, Mandel, f.

§ 102. A participle, when used in the sense of an adjective, is subject to the same rules of declension; as—das sterbende Blatt, the dying leaf; ein anstoßendes Zimmer, an adjoining room; das verlorene Paradies, Paradise Lost.

§ 103. (Both adjectives and participles can be used as substantives, always retaining, however, the declension peculiar to adjectives.) The masculine and feminine genders are employed, both in the singular and plural, to denote persons, and the neuter gender, in the singular, to denote things. Examples:—ein Deutscher, a German; eine Deutsche, a German woman; die Deutschen, the Germans; der Fremde, the stranger; Fremde, strangers; ein Sterblicher, a mortal; ein Reisender, a traveller; die Umstehenden, the bystanders; ein Gelehrter, a learned man; Gelehrte, learned people; das Gute, the good, or that which is good; Gutes thun, to do good.

§ 104. (Adjectives formed from proper names of places often take the suffix er, which is peculiar to substantives, in preference to the adjective suffix ich. Such adjectives are indeclinable, and can only be employed in the attributive connection.) For instance:—der Freiburger Münster, the minster of Friburg; die Frankfurter Zeitung, the Frankfort Gazette; das Heidelberger Faß, the Heidelberg tun; Hamburger Rindfleisch, Hamburg beef; die Leipziger Messe, the Leipzig fair; die Londoner Börse, the London Exchange; die Pariser Moden, the Paris fashions.

EXERCISE XXV.

The gentlemen¹ went into² an adjoining³ room. The decisive⁴ moment⁵ has (say, is) come. The charming⁶ weather invites⁷ to a walk. The rising⁸ sun is a beautiful sight.⁹ The expected¹⁰ ship has passed¹¹ the Sound.¹² I have returned¹³ the found purse¹⁴ to the rightful¹⁵ owner.¹⁶ Mr B. is a German. Mr A. and Mr B. are Germans. Is Mrs B. a German? A stranger¹⁷ wishes to speak to you.¹⁸ Strangers are not [being] admitted.¹⁹ We have the news²⁰ from²¹ a traveller.²² He has no sense²³ of (say, for²⁴) the beautiful and sublime.²⁵ Have you seen the Heidelberg tun? Do you like²⁶ Hamburg beef? I have eaten some Frankfort sausages.²⁷ Many merchants²⁸ buy their goods²⁹ at³⁰ the Leipzig fair. The lady³¹ wears³² a Paris bonnet.³³

¹ Gentleman, Herr. ² Into, in, with the accusative. ³ Adjoining, anstoßend. ⁴ Decisive, entscheidend. ⁵ Moment, Augenblick. ⁶ Charming, reizend. ⁷ Invites to a walk, ladet zu einem Spaziergange ein. ⁸ Rising, aufgehend. ⁹ Sight, Anblick. ¹⁰ Expected, erwartet. ¹¹ To pass, passieren. ¹² Sound, Sund. ¹³ To return, zurückgeben. ¹⁴ Purse, Börse. ¹⁵ Rightful, rechtmäßig. ¹⁶ Owner, Eigenthümer. ¹⁷ A stranger, ein Fremder. ¹⁸ To speak to you, mit Ihnen zu sprechen. ¹⁹ To admit, zulassen. ²⁰ News, Nachricht, f. ²¹ From, von, with the dative. ²² A traveller, ein Reisender. ²³ No sense (acc.), keinen Sinn. ²⁴ For, für, with the accusative. ²⁵ (The) sublime, (das) Erhabene. ²⁶ Do you like, essen Sie gern. ²⁷ Sausage, Würstchen. ²⁸ Many merchants, viele Kaufleute. ²⁹ Their goods, ihre Waaren. ³⁰ At, auf, with the dative. ³¹ Lady, Dame. ³² To wear, tragen. ³³ Bonnet, Hut.

XVI.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 105. When a quality is ascribed to an object without any regard to other objects, the adjective stands in its fundamental form, called the *positive* degree; as—der Mann ist reich, the man is rich. Herr N. ist ein reicher Mann, Mr N. is a rich man.

When a quality is ascribed to an object in a comparative relation to other objects, or when different qualities, in comparison with one another, are ascribed to the same object, the relation is either one of equality or of inequality. The

relation of equality is indicated in German as well as in English by certain particles placed before the positive. For example:—*Herr N. ist so reich als Herr Z.*, Mr N. is *as* rich as Mr Z. *Herr N. ist ein eben so reicher Mann als Herr Z.*, Mr N. is *just as* rich a man as Mr Z. *Er ist so edel als flug*, he is *as* noble *as* he is prudent.

The relation of inequality is expressed by particular forms of the adjective, called the *comparative* and *superlative* degrees.

§ 106. The comparative is used when a quality is ascribed to one person or thing in a higher degree than to another; or when to the same person or thing one quality is ascribed in a higher degree than another quality. In the former case, a *simple comparative* is used, which is formed, as in English, by adding to the adjective the syllable *er*; as in—*Herr N. ist reicher als Herr Z.*, Mr N. is richer than Mr Z. In the latter case, a *compound comparative* is used, which is formed by putting *mehr*, more, before the adjective; as in—*er ist mehr reich als weise*, he is more rich than wise.

§ 107. The vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, are modified in the simple comparative and superlative of most monosyllabic adjectives; as—*lang*, long; *länger*, longer; *der längste*, the longest; *flug*, clever; *flüger*, more clever; *der flügste*, the cleverest.

§ 108. The comparative remains unchanged, when used as predicate; but in the attributive connection it is declined like an adjective in the positive degree, either by the strong or the weak declension, as the general rule in § 101 provides. For example:—*A. ist reicher als B.*, A. is richer than B.; *der reichere Mann*, the richer man; *ein reicherer Mann*, a richer man; *reichere Leute*, richer people.

§ 109. The superlative is used when a quality is ascribed to a person or thing in the highest degree, in comparison with all other, or at least a given number of persons or things; or when a quality is ascribed to a person or thing in a very or eminently high degree, without strictly instituting a comparison. In the former case, the superlative is called the *relative superlative*; in the latter, the *absolute superlative*.

§ 110. The relative superlative is formed, as in English, by adding to the adjective *st* or *est*—the latter, if the final

consonant be *b, t, s, p, sch, z*—and modifying the vowel when the adjective is a monosyllable (§ 107). It is declined like the adjective in the positive degree. For instance:—*Er ist der reichste Mann in der ganzen Stadt*, he is the richest man in the whole town. *Die reichsten Leute sind nicht immer die glücklichsten*, the richest people are not always the happiest. *Der kürzeste Tag*, the shortest day. *Die breitesten Straßen*, the broadest streets. *Liebster Bruder*, dearest brother.

§ 111. The absolute superlative is formed by means of such adverbs as *höchst*, most; *sehr*, very; *äußerst*, extremely; *überaus*, exceedingly; *recht*, right; *ganz*, quite; *außerordentlich*, extraordinarily; *vorzüglich*, pre-eminently; *ungemein*, uncommonly. These are placed before the adjective, as in English, and the adjective is declined in the usual way. For instance:—*Das Dorf ist reinlich, und seine Lage höchst angenehm*, the village is clean, and its situation most pleasant. *Er ist ein überaus kluger Mann*, he is an exceedingly clever man. *Die Sache scheint mir äußerst wichtig*, the affair appears to me extremely important.

§ 112. The superlative of *groß*, great, is *der größte*, which is a contraction for *größeste*.

An interchange of *ch* and *h* takes place in *hoch*, high, *höher*, der *höchste*; and in *naß* or *nahe*, near, *näher*, der *nächste*.

Gut, good, has *besser* (der) *beste*. *viel, mehr, meist*

Viel, much, has *mehr*, der *meiste*. The plural of *mehr*—namely *mehre*, or more commonly *mehrere*—is used in the sense of ‘several.’

Wenig, little, few, has the regular forms *weniger*, der *wenigste*, and also the irregular forms *minder*, der *mindeste*.

EXERCISE XXVI.

Mr N. is as rich as Mr L. The duchy¹ of Brunswick² is not so large as the kingdom³ of Hanover.⁴ John⁵ is younger than⁶ Edward.⁷ He is taller⁸ than his brother. I have an older brother. The younger brother is going⁹ to be a

¹ Duchy, Herzogthum. ² Brunswick, Braunschweig. ³ Kingdom, Königreich.

⁴ Hanover, Hannover. ⁵ John, Johann. ⁶ Than, als. ⁷ Edward, Edward.

⁸ Tall, groß. ⁹ Is going to be a merchant, will Kaufmann werden.

merchant. He follows¹⁰ the example¹¹ of his¹² older brother. He goes with his¹³ older brother to Edinburgh.¹⁴ Is Mary¹⁵ older than Joanna?¹⁶ She has two younger sisters. Give [to] me¹⁷ a sharper¹⁸ knife. He is more rich than powerful.¹⁹ England is richer than Germany. This colour²⁰ is more green²¹ than black.²² The²³ hotter²⁴ the days, the more pleasant²⁵ the nights. London is the richest city²⁶ in Europe.²⁷ The English horses are the finest, strongest,²⁸ and most serviceable²⁹ in the world.³⁰ When³¹ shall we have the shortest³² day and the longest³³ night? Mr M. is one³⁴ of the most respected³⁵ merchants in Bremen. The largest chestnut-trees³⁶ grow on Mount Etna.³⁷ Dearest friend. I am your³⁸ most obedient³⁹ servant.⁴⁰ It was a most tedious⁴¹ journey.⁴² We have received⁴³ very agreeable⁴⁴ accounts.⁴⁵ The woman is in⁴⁶ an extremely distressing⁴⁷ condition.⁴⁸ She is a most modest⁴⁹ person.⁵⁰ Demosthenes was the greatest orator⁵¹ of Greece.⁵² We shall expect⁵³ you next week.⁵⁴ The mountains⁵⁵ are higher than they appear.⁵⁶ I shall wait for⁵⁷ a better opportunity.⁵⁸ The best man is not without⁵⁹ faults.⁶⁰ [The] most young people⁶¹ read without choice.⁶² Who has made⁶³ [the] fewest mistakes?⁶⁴

¹⁰ To follow, folgen, governs the dative. ¹¹ Example, Beispiel. ¹² Of his, seines. ¹³ With his, mit seinem (dat.) ¹⁴ To Edinburgh, nach Edinburgh. ¹⁵ Mary, Marie. ¹⁶ Joanna, Johanna. ¹⁷ To me, mir. ¹⁸ Sharp, scharf. ¹⁹ Powerful, mächtig. ²⁰ This colour, diese Farbe. ²¹ Green, grün. ²² Black, schwarz. ²³ The . . . , the . . . , je . . . , desto. ²⁴ Hot, heiß. ²⁵ Pleasant, angenehm. ²⁶ City, Stadt. ²⁷ Europe, Europa. ²⁸ Strong, stark. ²⁹ Serviceable, nützlich. ³⁰ In the world, auf der Welt. ³¹ When? wann? ³² Short, kurz. ³³ Long, lang. ³⁴ One, einer. ³⁵ Respected, angesehen. ³⁶ Chestnut-tree, Kastanienbaum. ³⁷ On Mount Etna, auf dem Aetna. ³⁸ Your, Ihr. ³⁹ Obedient, gehorsam. ⁴⁰ Servant, Diener. ⁴¹ Tedious, langweilig. ⁴² Journey, Reise. ⁴³ To receive, erhalten. ⁴⁴ Agreeable, erfreulich. ⁴⁵ Account, Nachricht, f. ⁴⁶ In, in, with the dative. ⁴⁷ Distressing, beträngt. ⁴⁸ Condition, Lage. ⁴⁹ Modest, bescheiden. ⁵⁰ Person, Person, f. ⁵¹ Orator, Redner. ⁵² Greece, Griechenland. ⁵³ To expect, erwarten. ⁵⁴ Week, Woche. ⁵⁵ Mountain, Berg. ⁵⁶ To appear, scheinen. ⁵⁷ To wait for, abwarten. ⁵⁸ Opportunity, Gelegenheit. ⁵⁹ Without, ohne, governs the accusative. ⁶⁰ Fault, Fehler. ⁶¹ People, Leute. ⁶² Choice, Wahl. ⁶³ To make, machen. ⁶⁴ Mistake, Fehler.

XVII.

P R O N O U N S.

§ 113. Pronouns are words which supply the place of the name of a person or thing, and at the same time shew the relation in which a person or thing stands to the speaker. Pronouns which are not joined to substantives, but stand by themselves, are called *substantive pronouns*; as—*ich*, I; *du*, thou; *er*, he; *wer*, who; *was*, what. Pronouns which are connected with a substantive like an attributive adjective, so as to qualify the substantive, are called *adjective pronouns*; as—*mein*, my; *dein*, thy; *sein*, his; *dieser*, this; *jener*, that; *welcher*, which.

In regard to signification, all pronouns are divided into six classes; namely—1. Personal Pronouns; 2. Possessive Pronouns; 3. Demonstrative Pronouns; 4. Interrogative Pronouns; 5. Relative Pronouns; 6. Indefinite Pronouns.

I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

§ 114. The personal pronouns point out the person speaking, or the first person—*ich*, I; in the plural *wir*, we; the person spoken to, or the second person—*du*, thou; in the plural *ihr*, you; the person or thing spoken of, or the third person—*er*, he; *sie*, she; *es*, it; in the plural *sie*, they. They are declined as follows:—

SINGULAR.

FIRST PERSON.	SECOND PERSON.	THIRD PERSON.		
		MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i> <i>ich</i> , I;	<i>du</i> , thou;	<i>er</i> , he;	<i>sie</i> , she;	<i>es</i> , it.
<i>Gen.</i> <i>meiner</i> , of me;	<i>deiner</i> , of thee;	<i>seiner</i> , of him;	<i>ihrer</i> , of her;	<i>seiner</i> , of it.
<i>Dat.</i> <i>mir</i> , to me;	<i>dir</i> , to thee;	<i>ihm</i> , to him;	<i>ihr</i> , to her;	<i>ihm</i> , to it.
<i>Acc.</i> <i>mid</i> , me;	<i>did</i> , thee;	<i>ihn</i> , him;	<i>sie</i> , her;	<i>es</i> , it

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i> <i>wir</i> , we;	<i>ihr</i> , you;	<i>sie</i> , they.
<i>Gen.</i> <i>unser</i> , of us;	<i>eurer</i> , of you;	<i>ihrer</i> , of them.
<i>Dat.</i> <i>uns</i> , to us;	<i>euch</i> , to you;	<i>ihnen</i> , to them.
<i>Acc.</i> <i>uns</i> . us;	<i>euch</i> , you;	<i>sie</i> , them.

Notes.

1. As the pronoun of the third person has in the singular different forms for the three genders, it must agree in gender with the substantive to which it refers. For example:—*Er* (namely, *der Schuh*) *ist zu eng*, it (the shoe) is too tight. *Sie* (namely, *die Erde*) *ist rund*, it (the earth) is round. *Ich habe ihn* (namely, *den Schlüssel*) *verloren*, I have lost it (the key).

2. The neuter pronoun of the third person cannot be joined to a preposition. The adverb *da*, there, or, when the preposition begins with a vowel, *dar* is used instead, and the preposition is annexed, as in *dadurch*, through it; *dafür*, for it; *dagegen*, against it; *damit*, with it; *davon*, of it; *darin*, in it; *darauf*, upon it; *darunter*, beneath it. For example:—*Ich stimme dafür*, I vote for it. *Bist du davon überzeugt?* art thou convinced of it? *Sie können sich darauf verlassen*, you may rely upon it.

§ 115. The most usual mode of addressing one or more persons is by the third person plural—*Sie*, you; *Ihnen*, to you; *Ihr*, your. The natural address by the second person singular—*du*, thou—is confined to such relations of intimacy as exist between the members of a family and confidential friends. The Supreme Being is also addressed by *Du*. The second person plural—*ihr*, you—is used in speaking to two or more persons, each of whom would be entitled to the familiar *du*. Other modes of address, such as the third person singular—*er*, he, *sie*, she—and also the second person plural—*ihr*, you—(to a single individual) are customary among country people and others living in a similar sphere. Inferiors, especially servants, are sometimes addressed by their employers in the third person singular; but even in such relations it is more common now to use, according to circumstances, either the second person singular, or the third person plural. In the poetical style, *du* and *ihr* are employed.

The addressing pronoun, especially that of the third person plural, is always written with a capital initial; *e.g.*—*Wo sind Sie gewesen?* where have you been? *Ich danke Ihnen*, I thank you.

EXERCISE XXVII.

I have seen him. He knows¹ me. Does she know thee? They asked us. We expect her to-day.² We do not expect them. Canst thou read? Give [to] me the book, I will

¹ To know, *fennen*. ² To-day, *heute*.

try³ it. Have you given [to] him the letter? Shew⁴ [to] her the way. We have spoken with⁵ them. He spoke with thee. I thank⁶ you. Does he think⁷ of me? We have thought of you. They mock at⁸ him. My father has bought [to] me a new hat, but⁹ it is too large; I must change¹⁰ it. The coat¹¹ is too tight; ¹² the tailor¹³ must alter¹⁴ it. Taste¹⁵ this orange; ¹⁶ it is very sweet. I shall vote¹⁷ for it (say, therefor). Do you insist¹⁸ upon¹⁹ it (say, thereupon)? Are you satisfied²⁰ with it (say, therewith)? I have heard of²¹ it (say, thereof).

- ³ To try, versuchen. ⁴ To shew, zeigen. ⁵ With, mit, governs the dative.
⁶ To thank, danken, takes the dative. ⁷ To think, denken, governs the genitive. ⁸ To mock at, spotten, governs the genitive. ⁹ But, aber.
¹⁰ To change, umtauschen. ¹¹ Coat, Rock. ¹² Tight, eng. ¹³ Tailor, Schneider. ¹⁴ To alter, ändern. ¹⁵ To taste, kosten. ¹⁶ This orange, diese Apfelsine. ¹⁷ To vote, stimmen. ¹⁸ To insist, bestehen. ¹⁹ Upon, auf.
²⁰ Satisfied, zufrieden. ²¹ Of, von.

REFLECTIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 116. The German language expresses the reflective relation in the first and second persons singular as well as plural by means of the personal pronouns; but in the third person both of the singular and plural by means of the word *sich*, which serves at once for the dative and accusative. For example:—

Sing. ich wasche mich, I wash myself;
 du wäschest dich, thou wasthest thyself;
 er (ste, es) wäscht sich, he (she, it) washes himself
 (herself, itself).

Plur. wir waschen uns, we wash ourselves;
 ihr wäscht euch, you wash yourselves;
 sie waschen sich, they wash themselves.

Or in the perfect:—

Sing. ich habe mich gewaschen, I have washed myself.

Plur. wir haben uns gewaschen, we have washed ourselves, &c.

Note.

The English reflective pronouns 'myself, thyself, himself,' &c., are often used in an *exclusive* sense, the emphasis being laid on 'self;' e. g.—
 I myself have been a witness of it. There he is himself. We have seen

We may add selbst for emphasis - but the ex. above is not to be used.

in 3d persons we have sich for all emergencies

it *ourselves*. In German, the indeclinable word *selbst* or *selber* is employed in this sense:—*Ich selbst bin Zeuge davon gewesen. Da ist er selber. Wir haben es selbst gesehen.* In cases where the English reflective pronoun conveys at once an exclusive and reflective meaning, the word *selbst* is added to the reflective pronoun in German. For example:—*Erkenne dich selbst, know thyself. Homer vergaß sich selbst, Homer forgot himself.*

The word *selbst* is also used with an *inclusive* signification, and is translated by 'even,' or by the pronouns 'myself, thyself, himself,' &c. In this sense it always has a subordinate accent. Examples:—*Selbst der Reichste ist nicht ohne Sorgen, even the richest, or the richest himself, is not without cares. Wanken auch die Berge selbst? do even the very mountains shake?*

§ 117. The reflective pronouns of the plural—*uns, euch, sich*—can also be employed when a *reciprocal* action between two or more subjects is to be expressed. For example:—*Wir sahen uns bestürzt an, we looked at each other with surprise. Die Tyrannen reichen sich die Hände, the tyrants reach their hands to one another.* This relation is more commonly expressed, however, by the indeclinable word *einander*, especially if an ambiguity could possibly arise from the use of the reflective pronouns; *e.g.*—*Wir schätzen einander, we esteem one another. Sie kennen einander, they know each other; or with prepositions—Wir schreiben an einander, we write to each other. Sie saßen neben einander, they sat beside each other.*

EXERCISE XXVIII.

I am washing myself. We shall wash ourselves. Wash thyself. He has cut¹ himself. I have wounded² myself. You trouble³ yourself too much.⁴ They are dressing⁵ themselves. Dress yourself. Has she saved⁶ herself? Have they saved themselves? [The] man accustoms⁷ himself to everything.⁸ The earth⁹ adorns¹⁰ itself with flowers. I have seen it myself. He must come himself. She will do it herself. Have you heard it yourself? Know¹¹ thyself. She speaks always¹² of¹³ herself. The wisest¹⁴ himself can err.¹⁵ Even my¹⁶ best friends have forsaken¹⁷ me. We

¹ To cut, *schneiden.* ² To wound, *verwunden.* ³ To trouble, *bemühen.*

⁴ Too much, *zu sehr.* ⁵ To dress, *anziehen or anfleiden.* ⁶ To save, *retten.*

⁷ To accustom, *gewöhnen.* ⁸ To everything, *an Alles.* ⁹ Earth, *Erde.*

¹⁰ To adorn, *schmücken.* ¹¹ To know, *erkennen.* ¹² Always, *immer.* ¹³ Of,

von. ¹⁴ Wise, *weise.* ¹⁵ To err, *irren.* ¹⁶ My (plur.), *meine.* ¹⁷ To forsake, *verlassen.*

einander (indeclinable)

meet¹⁸ each other every day.¹⁹ We wished each other a good-night. They betrayed²⁰ each other. They betrayed themselves. We sat beside²¹ each other.

¹⁸ To meet, treffen or begegnen.
verrathen. ²¹ Beside, neben.

¹⁹ Every day, alle Tage.

²⁰ To betray,

II. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 118. The possessive pronouns represent the object to which they are joined, as being in the possession of one of the three persons—the person or persons speaking, spoken to, or spoken of. They are formed from the genitive of the personal pronouns, the latter assuming the form of adjectives

SINGULAR.

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>First Person,</i>	mein,	meine,	mein, my.
<i>Second "</i>	dein,	deine,	dein, thy.
<i>Third "</i>	{ sein, ihr,	{ seine, ihre,	{ sein, his, its. ihr, her, its.

PLURAL.

<i>First Person,</i>	unser,	unsere,	unser, our.
<i>Second "</i>	euer,	eure,	euer, your.
<i>Third "</i>	ihr, (Ihr,	ihre, Ihre,	ihr, their. Ihr, your

when used to address one or more persons.)

The possessive pronouns agree with the substantive which they qualify in gender, number, and case. They are declined after the strong declension of adjectives, but they have, like the indefinite article, no inflectional termination in the nominative singular masculine or in the nominative and accusative singular neuter.

SINGULAR.

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	ALL THREE GENDERS.
<i>Nom.</i>	mein,	meine,	mein, my ;	meine, my.
<i>Gen.</i>	meines,	meiner,	meines, of my ;	meiner, of my.
<i>Dat.</i>	meinem,	meiner,	meinem, to my ;	meinen, to my.
<i>Acc.</i>	meinen,	meine,	mein, my ;	meine, my.

Note.

As there are two pronouns for the third person singular—*sein* and *ihre*—it depends in every instance upon the gender of the antecedent, which of the two must be employed; whilst the declension of the pronoun—that is, in what gender, number, and case it is to be put—depends upon the substantive which it precedes and qualifies. For example:—*Die Blume hat ihren schönen Geruch verloren*, the flower has lost *its* fine smell. *Die Natur fordert unwiderstehlich ihre Rechte*, nature irresistibly demands *its* (or *her*) rights. *Das Dorf mit seinen Bewohnern*, the village with *its* inhabitants.

§ 119. When the substantive which the possessive pronoun qualifies is omitted or understood, the pronoun takes either the weak or the strong declension throughout, according as the definite article precedes it or not. For instance:—*Wem gehört dieser Hut? Es ist meiner*, or *der meine*. To whom does this hat belong? It is *mine*. *Leihe ihm dein Buch*, er hat *seines* (or *das seine*) *verlegt*, lend him thy book, he has mislaid *his*.

Instead of *der*, *die*, *das meine*; *der*, *die*, *das seine*; *der*, *die*, *das unsere*, &c., the following forms are in ~~more ordinary use~~: *sonst*

<u>der</u> , <i>die</i> , <i>das</i> <u>meinige</u> , mine;	<i>der</i> , <i>die</i> , <i>das</i> <i>unsrige</i> , ours.
" " " <i>deinige</i> , thine;	" " " <i>eurige</i> , yours.
" " " <i>seinige</i> , his;	" " " <i>ihrige</i> , theirs.
" " " <i>ihrige</i> , hers;	" " " (<i>Ihrige</i> , yours.)

They always have the definite article, and are accordingly declined after the weak declension. For example:—*Meine Gesundheit ist dauerhafter als die seinige*, my health is stronger than his. *Wir wohnen in einem fremden Hause*, wir haben *das unsrige* *vermietet*, we live in another person's house; we have let ours, or our own.

Note.

When the possessive pronoun is the predicate of a sentence, the forms *mein*, *dein*, *sein*, *unser*, *euer*, *ihr* (without any change whatever), are also used. For instance:—*Was dieses Zimmer enthält, ist mein*, what this room contains, is mine. *Dieser Augenblick ist dein*, this moment is thine, or thy own. *Kein Kaiser kann, was unser ist, verschenken*, no emperor can give away what is ours.

EXERCISE XXIX.

My brother has lost¹ his pocket-handkerchief.² My mother is visiting³ her sister in B. Hast thou spent⁴ thy money?

¹ To lose, verlieren. ² Pocket-handkerchief, Taschentuch. ³ To visit, besuchen. ⁴ To spend, ausgeben.

I shall not attain⁵ my object.⁶ My uncle⁷ gives [to] his sons a good education.⁸ Where is your father's sister? Our tutor⁹ is an Englishman.¹⁰ We shall sell our horses. The children are [being] instructed¹¹ by¹² their governess.¹³ The flower has lost its fresh¹⁴ colour.¹⁵ The river is navigable,¹⁶ for¹⁷ its bed¹⁸ is deep¹⁹ and broad.²⁰ Will you lend [to] me your grammar?²¹ I have mislaid²² mine. I have mislaid my German reading-book;²³ lend [to] me yours. Their house is larger than ours. I prefer²⁴ our house to theirs. Thy translation²⁵ is more correct²⁶ than his.

⁵ To attain, erreichen. ⁶ Object, Zweck. ⁷ Uncle, Onkel. ⁸ Education, Erziehung. ⁹ Tutor, Hauslehrer. ¹⁰ Englishman, Engländer. ¹¹ To instruct, unterrichten; the prefix is inseparable. ¹² By, von, with the dative. ¹³ Governess, Erzieherin. ¹⁴ Fresh, frisch. ¹⁵ Colour, Farbe. ¹⁶ Navigable, schiffbar. ¹⁷ For, denn. ¹⁸ Bed, Bett. ¹⁹ Deep, tief. ²⁰ Broad, breit. ²¹ Grammar, Grammatik, f. ²² To mislay, verlegen. ²³ Reading-book, Lesebuch. ²⁴ To prefer, vorziehen. ²⁵ Translation, Uebersetzung. ²⁶ Correct, richtig.

III. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 120. Demonstrative pronouns point to an object, and can all be used substantively as well as adjectively. There are six demonstrative pronouns; namely—

- der, die, das, the, that. *used for all three nouns*
 1. dieser, diese, dieses, this.
 2. jener, jene, jenes, that, yon.
 solcher, solche, solches, such.
 3. derjenige, diejenige, dasjenige, that. *generally followed by a relative*
 derselbe, dieselbe, dasselbe, the same. *derjenige welcher*

They are declined as follows:—

The declension of der, die, das, when used adjectively—that is, in an adjective connection with a substantive—is the same as that of the definite article. But when used substantively—that is, not in an adjective connection with a substantive—it has the following enlarged forms:—

Sing. Gen. dessen, deren, dessen, of that; of him, of her, of it.

Plur. Gen. (derer, or) deren, of those, of them.

Dat. denen, to those, to them.

The form deren, of them, in the genitive plural can be used

only in the sense of the genitive plural of the third personal pronoun, *ihrer*.

Dieser, *jener*, and *solcher*, are declined according to the strong declension of adjectives. *Solcher* occurs also with the definite article placed either before or after it:—*ein solcher*, *eine solche*, *ein solches*; or *solch ein*, *solch eine*, *solch ein*. In the former case, *ein solcher* is declined like an adjective; in the latter, *solch* remains unchanged.

Derjenige and *derselbe* are declined like adjectives with the definite article:—

SINGULAR.			
MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> <i>derjenige</i> ,	<i>diejenige</i> ,	<i>dasjenige</i> ,	<i>diejenigen</i> .
<i>Gen.</i> <i>desjenigen</i> ,	<i>derjenigen</i> ,	<i>desjenigen</i> ,	<i>derjenigen</i> .
<i>Dat.</i> <i>demjenigen</i> ,	<i>derjenigen</i> ,	<i>demjenigen</i> ,	<i>denjenigen</i> .
<i>Acc.</i> <i>denjenigen</i> ,	<i>diejenige</i> ,	<i>dasjenige</i> ,	<i>diejenigen</i> .
<i>Nom.</i> <i>derselbe</i> ,	<i>dieselbe</i> ,	<i>dasjelbe</i> ,	<i>dieselben</i> .
<i>Gen.</i> <i>desselben</i> ,	<i>derselben</i> ,	<i>desselben</i> ,	<i>derselben</i> .
<i>Dat.</i> <i>demselben</i> ,	<i>derselben</i> ,	<i>demselben</i> ,	<i>denselben</i> .
<i>Acc.</i> <i>denselben</i> ,	<i>dieselbe</i> ,	<i>dasjelbe</i> ,	<i>dieselben</i> .

The meaning of the six demonstratives is sufficiently apparent from the English equivalents given above. In regard to the two pronouns *jener* and *derjenige*, it should be observed that the former points to a particular or definite object distant from the speaker, whilst the latter does not point to a particular object, but to an object which requires to be defined by means of a relative clause or otherwise. For example:—*Jenes Haus ist zu vermietten*, that (particular) house is to be let. *Dasjenige Haus, welches auf Sand gebaut ist, steht auf keinem festen Grunde*, that house which is built upon sand, stands on no firm foundation.

Notes.

1. When the demonstrative '*that*' is joined to a preposition proper, its equivalent in German very often assumes the form of the adverb *da*, or when the preposition begins with a vowel, of *dar*, and the preposition is annexed. But this takes place only if the notion of a thing (and not of a person) is expressed, and if, at the same time, the pronoun is not joined with a substantive. Thus *dadurch* is said for '*through that*,' *damit* for '*with that*,' *dafür* for '*for that*,' *dabei* for '*at that*,' *darin* for '*in that*,' *darauf* for '*upon that*,' &c. For example:—*Ich bin dafür verantwortlich*, I am responsible for that. *Ich weiß nichts davon*, I know nothing of that.

Darin hast du Recht, in that you are right. Ich habe nicht daran gedacht, I did not think of that. In a similar position, the adverb *hier* is used instead of the neuter *dieses*, the preposition being annexed. For example:—*Hieran* erkenne ich ihn, by this (or hereby) I know him. *Hievon* weiß ich nichts, of this I know nothing. *Hiermit* (or *hiemit*) muß ich schließen, with this I must close.

2. The neuter *dieses*, when used substantively, is, like the neuter *das* or *es*, often employed in the nominative and accusative, to indicate the most general and indefinite notion of a person or thing, without any regard to the gender or number of the object pointed at. *Dieses* is then usually contracted into *dies*. Examples:—*Dies* ist ein Feigenbaum, this is a fig-tree. *Dies* ist eine Nelke, this is a pink. Wofür hältst du dies? what doest thou take this for? *Dies* sind wichtige Papiere, these are important documents. *Dies* hier ist mein Schwesterjohn, this is my sister's son. *Das* ist Herr Reding, that is Mr Reding. *Das* ist des Königs Wille nicht, that is not the will of the king. *Das* sind Stachelbeeren, those are gooseberries. *Es* war meine Mutter, it was my mother. *Es* sind Fremde, they are strangers.

EXERCISE XXX.

That *one* has broken¹ the looking-glass.² Do you know that *woman*? We have heard that already.³ I do not recollect⁴ that. This horse is younger than that. These trees are higher than those. The author⁵ of this book is an American.⁶ My friend lives⁷ in this street. A German family lives in that house. That old tree shall be cut down.⁸ That tree which⁹ bears no fruit, will be cut down. [The] men commonly¹⁰ hate¹¹ him (say, that *one*) whom¹² they fear.¹³ Our garden is small, but that of our neighbour is smaller. Not every¹⁴ tree bears such fruit. Can you write with such pens? Such a fault¹⁵ is inexcusable.¹⁶ I have read the same story.¹⁷ All newspapers¹⁸ report¹⁹ the same accidents.²⁰ I come with the same request.²¹ I shall be responsible²² for that (say, therefor). Have you heard of that (say, thereof)? By²³ this (say, hereby) you will (say,

¹ To break, zerbrechen. ² Looking-glass, Spiegel. ³ Already, schon.

⁴ To recollect, sich erinnern; governs the genitive. Arrange, 'I recollect myself of that not.' ⁵ Author, Verfasser. ⁶ American, Amerikaner. ⁷ To live, wohnen. ⁸ To cut down, umbauen. ⁹ Which bears no fruit, welcher keine Frucht trägt. ¹⁰ Commonly, gewöhnlich; comes after the verb. ¹¹ To hate, hassen. ¹² Whom, den. ¹³ To fear, fürchten. ¹⁴ Every, jeder. ¹⁵ Fault, Fehler. ¹⁶ Inexcusable, unverzeihlich. ¹⁷ Story, Geschichte. ¹⁸ All newspapers, alle Zeitungen. ¹⁹ To report, berichten. ²⁰ Accident, Unglücksfall. ²¹ Request, Bitte. ²² Responsible, verantwortlich. ²³ By, an.

will you) know²⁴ him. That is my cousin.²⁵ Is this your parasol?²⁶ These are my boots.²⁷ This is a lion,²⁸ and that is a lioness.²⁹ These are strawberries,³⁰ and those are gooseberries.³¹ This is a Geneva³² watch.

²⁴ To know, erkennen. ²⁵ Cousin, Vetter. ²⁶ Parasol, Sonnenschirm. ²⁷ Boot, Stiefel. ²⁸ Lion, Löwe. ²⁹ Lioness, Löwin. ³⁰ Strawberry, Erdbeere. ³¹ Gooseberry, Stachelbeere. ³² Geneva, Genfer; see § 104.

IV. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 121. Interrogative pronouns inquire regarding an object. There are four:—

wer? who?
was? what?
welcher, welche, welches? which?
was für ein, eine, ein? what kind of?

The declension of wer and was is as follows:—

Nom. wer? who?	was? what?
Gen. wessen? whose?	wessen? of what?
Dat. wem? to whom?	(dative is wanting). <i>not used</i>
Acc. wen? whom?	was? what?

Neither wer nor was has a plural.

Welcher, e, es, is declined like an adjective after the strong declension. In was für ein, only ein is declined. Before names of materials, and in the plural, ein is dropped, as in was für Wein? what kind of wine? Was für Gläser? what kind of glasses?

Note.

Was cannot be connected with a preposition; the adverb wo is then used in its stead (or wer, if the preposition begin with a vowel), and the preposition is annexed; as—wovon, of what; wodurch, through what; womit, with what; worin, in what; worauf, upon what. For example:—Wovon sprach er? what did he speak of? Womit kann ich Ihnen dienen? with what can I serve you? Worin habe ich gefehlt? in what have I done wrong?

§ 122. Both wer and was are substantive pronouns, whence they cannot be joined to a substantive. For example:—Wer ruft Hilfe? who calls for help? Wessen Handschrift ist dies? whose handwriting is this? Wen meinen Sie? whom do you mean? Was ist geschehen? what has happened? Was sehe ich! what do I see!

Welcher and was für ein have the nature of adjectives, and can therefore be joined to substantives. Whilst wer and was inquire quite indefinitely, the former after a person, the latter after a thing, welcher, e, es, inquires after a particular person or thing, and was für ein, eine, ein, after a particular kind or sort. For example:—Welches Pferd wollen Sie reiten? Den Braunen. Which horse are you going to ride? The bay horse. Was für ein Pferd ist dies? Ein Araber. What kind of horse is this? An Arabian.

EXERCISE XXXI.

Who knocks?¹ Whose handwriting² is this? To whom did you lend (say, have you lent) your penknife?³ Whom shall⁴ I ask? What does he mean?⁵ I do not know what he means. What ails you?⁶ Of what (say, whereof) are you talking?⁷ What are you laughing at?⁸ (say, Whereat are you laughing?) Which poem⁹ have you read? Advise¹⁰ me, which poem I am to read.¹¹ What sort of wine is this? It is Moselle.¹² By¹³ which train¹⁴ will you go (say, travel)? By the evening-train.¹⁵ What crime¹⁶ has that man committed?¹⁷ Can you tell¹⁸ [to] me, in which house Mr P. lives? What kind of wood¹⁹ is that? What kind of glasses do you want?²⁰

¹ To knock, klopfen. ² Handwriting, Handschrift. ³ Penknife, Feder-
messer. ⁴ Shall, soll. ⁵ To mean, meinen. ⁶ Ails you, fehlt Ihnen. ⁷ To
talk, sprechen. ⁸ At, über. ⁹ Poem, Gedicht. ¹⁰ To advise, raten; governs
the dative. ¹¹ I am to read, ich lesen soll. ¹² Moselle, Moselwein. ¹³ By,
mit. ¹⁴ Train, Zug (dat.). ¹⁵ Evening-train, Abendzug. ¹⁶ Crime, Ver-
brechen, n. ¹⁷ To commit, begehen. ¹⁸ To tell, sagen. ¹⁹ Wood, Holz.
²⁰ To want, wünschen.

V. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 123. A relative pronoun puts an explanatory clause in connection with another sentence. The German language uses in the sense of relatives three interrogative pronouns and one demonstrative; namely—

(wer, who; he who
was, what; that which
{ welcher, e, es, } who, which, that
{ der, die, das, }

push the verb to the end.
these two pronouns are used
see back to

The declension of *wer*, *was*, and *welcher*, is the same as when these pronouns are used interrogatively; and *der*, *die*, *das*, is declined in the same manner as the demonstrative when used substantively, namely—

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> <i>der</i> , <i>die</i> , <i>das</i> ;	<i>die</i> .
<i>Gen.</i> <i>dessen</i> , <i>deren</i> , <i>dessen</i> ;	<i>deren</i> .
<i>Dat.</i> <i>dem</i> , <i>der</i> , <i>dem</i> ;	<i>denen</i> .
<i>Acc.</i> <i>den</i> , <i>die</i> , <i>das</i> ;	<i>die</i> .

§ 124. *Wer* and *was* are substantive pronouns, whence they cannot be referred to a noun or personal pronoun. *Wer*, who, is equivalent to 'he who,' or 'the man who,' and *was*, what, to 'that which,' or 'the thing which.' For example:—*Wer nicht hören will, muß fühlen*, who (or, he who) does not wish to hear, must feel. *Was du heute thun kannst, verschiebe nicht auf morgen*, what (or, that which) thou canst do to-day, do not delay till to-morrow.

§ 125. *Welcher*, *welche*, *welches*, and *der*, *die*, *das*, on the other hand, are adjective pronouns, and agree in gender and number with the noun to which they refer. For example:—*Ich kann das Buch nicht finden, welches ich Ihnen zu leihen versprach*, I cannot find the book which I promised to lend you. *Der Herr, mit dem Sie mich heute sahen, ist ein Freund meines Vaters*, the gentleman with whom you saw me to-day, is a friend of my father's.

§ 126. There is no material difference of signification between *welcher*, *welche*, *welches*, and *der*, *die*, *das*, and it must generally be decided by euphony or taste which shall be employed in any particular case. Under certain circumstances, however, the requisite forms of *der*, *die*, *das*, must be employed. This is especially the case when the relative pronoun stands in the genitive, in English 'of which, of whom, whose.' For example:—*Der Herr, dessen Haus ich gekauft habe, ist ausgewandert*, the gentleman whose house I have bought, has emigrated. *Die Bücher, deren ich bedarf, sind bestellt worden*, the books which I require, have been ordered. *Die Geschichte, deren Kenntniß so wichtig ist*, history, the knowledge of which is so important.

EXERCISE XXXII.

and p. 145.

Who comes¹ too late,² must pay³ a fine.⁴ Who does not obey⁵ the laws,⁶ is punished⁷ by the authorities.⁸ What you hear, is the truth.⁹ Repeat¹⁰ what I have said. The shoemaker¹¹ who made (say, has made) these shoes, is a good worker.¹² The governess¹³ who teaches¹⁴ my sisters, is an Englishwoman.¹⁵ The world is a great stage,¹⁶ on¹⁷ which every one¹⁸ plays his part.¹⁹ The goods²⁰ which you have ordered,²¹ will be shipped²² to-day. The vessel²³ in which your goods are shipped, will sail²⁴ to-morrow.²⁵ Is F. the author²⁶ whose works²⁷ are translated²⁸ into English?²⁹ Mr O. is an eminent³⁰ barrister,³¹ upon³² whose integrity³³ you can rely.³⁴ The books which I require,³⁵ must be ordered³⁶ from Leipzig.³⁷ Mrs³⁸ S. is a singer³⁹ whose voice⁴⁰ is universally⁴¹ admired.⁴²

¹ Every relative clause being dependent, the verb containing the assertion is removed to the end (§ 29); as—'who too late comes;' 'who the laws not obeys.' ² Too late, zu spät. ³ To pay, bezahlen. ⁴ Fine, Geldstrafe. ⁵ To obey, gehorchen; governs the dative. ⁶ Law, Gesetz. ⁷ To punish, bestrafen. ⁸ By the authorities, von der Obrigkeit. ⁹ Truth, Wahrheit. ¹⁰ To repeat, wiederholen; the prefix is inseparable. ¹¹ Shoemaker, Schuhmacher. ¹² Worker, Arbeiter. ¹³ Governess, Gräfin. ¹⁴ To teach, unterrichten. ¹⁵ Englishwoman, Engländerin. ¹⁶ Stage, Bühne or Schaubühne. ¹⁷ On, auf, with the dative. ¹⁸ Every one, Jeder. ¹⁹ Part, Rolle. ²⁰ Goods, Waaren. ²¹ To order, bestellen. ²² To ship, versenden. ²³ Vessel, Schiff. ²⁴ To sail, in See gehen. ²⁵ To-morrow, morgen. ²⁶ Author, Schriftsteller. ²⁷ Work, Werk. ²⁸ To translate, übersetzen; the prefix is inseparable (§ 62, note). ²⁹ Into English, in's Englische. ³⁰ Eminent, ausgezeichnet. ³¹ Barrister, Advokat. ³² Upon, auf. ³³ Integrity, Redlichkeit. ³⁴ To rely, sich verlassen. ³⁵ To require, bedürfen, governs the genitive. ³⁶ To order, verschreiben. ³⁷ From Leipzig, aus Leipzig. ³⁸ Mrs, Frau. ³⁹ Singer, Sängerin. ⁴⁰ Voice, Stimme. ⁴¹ Universally, allgemein. ⁴² To admire, bewundern.

VI. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

§ 127. The indefinite pronouns speak of persons and things in an indefinite or general way. They have the nature of substantives, but can be used only in the singular number. The following are of this description:—

Jedermann, everybody;
Jemand, somebody, anybody;

Niemand, nobody, not anybody ;
 man, one, people (the French 'on') ;
 etwas, something, anything ;
 nichts, nothing, not anything.

Jedermann takes s in the genitive—Jedermanns. Jemand and Niemand have in the genitive Jemandes, Niemandes ; in the dative, and sometimes in the accusative, Jemanden, Niemanden. Man, etwas, and nichts are indeclinable.

The numeral Einer, some one, is often used for Jemand, and Keiner, no one, for Niemand. They are both declined after the strong declension of adjectives ; namely—gen. Eines, Keines ; dat. Einem, Keinem ; acc. Einen, Keinen.

Notes.

1. The indefinite possessive pronoun, correlative with man, is sein, one's, and the indefinite reflective pronoun sich, one's self. For example :—Man muß auf seiner Hut sein, one must be on one's guard. Man erkältet sich leicht, one easily catches cold.

2. Jemand, Einer, and etwas, have sometimes the word irgend put before them, which makes their meaning more general and indefinite.

EXERCISE XXXIIL

He is acquainted¹ with everybody. He is everybody's friend. It is impossible² to satisfy³ everybody. Is anybody in the⁴ room ? I have not⁵ seen anybody. Has anybody asked⁶ for⁷ me ? I wrong no one (say, I do to no one wrong⁸). One must speak ill⁹ of¹⁰ nobody. One easily¹¹ forgets, what one has listened to¹² without interest.¹³ People (say, one) cannot expect to reap,¹⁴ what they have (say, one has) never¹⁵ sown.¹⁶ Have you lost anything ? I must eat something. He has lived¹⁷ so extravagantly,¹⁸ that he has left¹⁹ nothing to his family. One must help²⁰ one's neighbour.²¹ One must guard²² one's self against impostors.²³

¹ Acquainted, bekannt. ² Impossible, unmöglich. ³ To satisfy, befriedigen ; use the supine, and put it last. ⁴ In the, im. ⁵ Not anybody, say, nobody. ⁶ To ask, fragen. ⁷ For, nach, with the dative. ⁸ Wrong, Unrecht. ⁹ To speak ill, Böses reden. ¹⁰ Of, von. ¹¹ Easily, leicht ; comes after 'forgets.' ¹² To listen to, anhören. ¹³ Interest, Interesse. ¹⁴ To reap, ernten ; use the supine. ¹⁵ Never, nie. ¹⁶ To sow, säen. ¹⁷ To live, leben. ¹⁸ Extravagantly, verschwenderisch. ¹⁹ To leave, hinterlassen ; the prefix is inseparable. Arrange, 'that he to his family nothing left has.' ²⁰ To help, helfen ; governs the dative. ²¹ Neighbour, Nächste. ²² To guard, hüten. ²³ Against impostors, vor Betrügern.

XVIII.

NUMERALS.

§ 128. Numerals are words which are joined to substantives to denote the number or quantity of objects. They are divided into *definite* and *indefinite* numerals, according as they denote either a definite or indefinite number or quantity. Of the former class are, for example, *drei*, three; *vier*, four; *der dritte*, the third; *der vierte*, the fourth; of the latter, *jeder*, every; *einige*, some; *viel*, much; *wenig*, little.

I. CARDINAL NUMERALS.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. <i>eins</i> , one (<i>ein, eine, ein</i>). | 30. <i>dreißig</i> , thirty. |
| 2. <i>zwei</i> , two. | 40. <i>vierzig</i> , forty. |
| 3. <i>drei</i> , three. | 50. <i>funfzig</i> or <i>fünfzig</i> , fifty. |
| 4. <i>vier</i> , four. | 60. <i>sechzig</i> , sixty. |
| 5. <i>fünf</i> , five. | 70. <i>siebzig</i> , seventy. |
| 6. <i>sechs</i> , six. | 80. <i>achtzig</i> , eighty. |
| 7. <i>sieben</i> , seven. | 90. <i>neunzig</i> , ninety. |
| 8. <i>acht</i> , eight. | 100. <i>hundert</i> , a hundred. |
| 9. <i>neun</i> , nine. | 101. <i>hundert (und) eins</i> ,
one hundred and one. |
| 10. <i>zehn</i> , ten. | 102. <i>hundert (und) zwei</i> ,
one hundred and two. |
| 11. <i>elf</i> , eleven. | 103. <i>hundert (und) drei</i> ,
one hundred and three. |
| 12. <i>zwölf</i> , twelve. | 130. <i>hundert (und) dreißig</i> ,
one hundred and thirty. |
| 13. <i>dreizehn</i> , thirteen. | 131. <i>hundert ein und dreißig</i> ,
one hundred and thirty-one. |
| 14. <i>vierzehn</i> , fourteen. | 200. <i>zweihundert</i> , two hundred. |
| 15. <i>funfzehn</i> or <i>fünfzehn</i> ,
fifteen. | 300. <i>dreihundert</i> , three hundred. |
| 16. <i>sechzehn</i> , sixteen. | |
| 17. <i>siebzehn</i> , seventeen. | |
| 18. <i>achtzehn</i> , eighteen. | |
| 19. <i>neunzehn</i> , nineteen. | |
| 20. <i>zwanzig</i> , twenty. | |
| 21. <i>ein und zwanzig</i> , one
and twenty. | |
| 22. <i>zwei und zwanzig</i> ,
two and twenty. | |
| 23. <i>drei und zwanzig</i> ,
three and twenty. | |

1000. tauſend, a thou- sand.	100,000. hunderttauſend, one hundred thousand.
2000. zweitaufend, two thousand.	1,000,000. eine Million, a mil- lion.
10,000. zehntauſend, ten thousand.	2,000,000. zwei Millionen, two millions.

§ 129. From the cardinal numbers various other numerals are formed by composition :—1. einerlei, of one kind ; zweierlei, of two kinds ; dreierlei, of three kinds, &c. 2. einfach, simple ; zweifach or zweifach, twofold ; dreifach, threefold, &c. 3. einmal, once ; zweimal, twice ; dreimal, thrice, &c. 4. je zwei, or zwei und zwei, two at a time ; je drei, or drei und drei, three at a time, &c.

EXERCISE XXXIV.

6. 12. 24. 36. 48. 60. 72. 84. 96. 253. 441.
795. 1382. 1854. 3967. 48,579. 2,376,890. A day has twenty-four hours.¹ A year has 365 days. A leap-year² has 366 days. The play³ has three acts.⁴ The book has 274 pages.⁵ I have bought six pounds⁶ of tea, three pounds of coffee,⁷ and four pounds of sugar.⁸ Lend [to] me two sheets⁹ of paper.¹⁰ I shall send [to] you ten yards¹¹ of cloth.¹² I require¹³ eight ounces¹⁴ of pepper.¹⁵ This case¹⁶ contains¹⁷ twelve bottles¹⁸ of wine. The board¹⁹ is ten feet²⁰ long and fifteen inches²¹ broad. I have eaten one apple²² and two pears.²³ We have drunk two kinds of wine.²⁴ That is tenfold profit.²⁵ I have been four times²⁶ in Germany.

¹ Hour, Stunde. ² Leap-year, Schaltjahr. ³ Play, Schauspiel. ⁴ Act, Aufzug. ⁵ Page, Seite. ⁶ Pounds, Pfund. ⁷ Coffee, Kaffee. ⁸ Sugar, Zucker. ⁹ Sheets, Bogen. ¹⁰ Paper, Papier. ¹¹ Yards, Ellen. ¹² Cloth, Tuch. ¹³ To require, brauchen. ¹⁴ Ounces, Unzen. ¹⁵ Pepper, Pfeffer. ¹⁶ Case, Kiste. ¹⁷ To contain, enthalten. ¹⁸ Bottles, Flaschen. ¹⁹ Board, Brett. ²⁰ Feet, Fuß. ²¹ Inches, Zoll. ²² Apple, Apfel. ²³ Pear, Birne. ²⁴ Two kinds of wine, zweierlei Wein. ²⁵ Tenfold profit, zehnfacher Gewinn. ²⁶ Four times, viermal.

II. ORDINAL NUMERALS.

§ 130. The ordinal numerals, from zwei to neunzehn inclusive, are formed from the cardinal numerals by adding t, and from zwanzig upwards by adding st. They are declined like adjectives. For 'the first' there is used the superlative der

erste, and for 'the third' der dritte. In compound numerals, the last only takes the termination of the ordinal.

1. der, die, das erste, the first.
2. " " " zweite, the second.
3. " " " dritte, the third.
4. " " " vierte, the fourth.
5. " " " fünfte, the fifth.
6. " " " sechste, the sixth.
7. " " " siebente, the seventh.
8. " " " achte, the eighth.
9. " " " neunte, the ninth.
10. " " " zehnte, the tenth.
11. " " " elfte, the eleventh.
12. " " " zwölfte, the twelfth.
13. " " " dreizehnte, the thirteenth.
14. " " " vierzehnte, the fourteenth.
15. " " " funfzehnte, the fifteenth, &c.
20. " " " zwanzigste, the twentieth.
21. " " " ein und zwanzigste, the twenty-first.
22. " " " zwei und zwanzigste, the twenty-second.
30. " " " dreißigste, the thirtieth.
31. " " " ein und dreißigste, the thirty-first.
40. " " " vierzigste, the fortieth.
100. " " " hundertste, the hundredth.
101. " " " hundert und erste, the hundred and first.
200. " " " zweihundertste, the two hundredth.
1000. " " " tausendste, the thousandth.

Notes.

1. When an ordinal number is used, for the sake of distinction, in conjunction with the proper name of a person, it is placed after the name, as in English; e. g.—Friedrich der Zweite, Frederick the Second. Ludwig der Sechzehnte, Louis the Sixteenth.

2. In stating the day of the month, the ordinal number is employed adjectively; as—der erste Januar, the first of January; den (or am) sechsten December, on the sixth of December.

§ 131. *Fractional Numbers* are formed by compounding the ordinals with tel, which is a contraction for Theil, part; as—

Bruch, die Brüche " ein Drittel, a third (part).
 " Viertel, a fourth.
 " Fünftel, a fifth.
 " Sechstel, a sixth, &c.

Instead of *Zweitel* is used the adjective *halb*, half, which is declined like every other adjective; *e. g.*—*ein halbes Stück Tuch*, half a piece of cloth; *der halbe Tag*, half the day; *eine halbe Stunde*, half an hour. But before names of towns and countries without the definite article, *halb* remains unchanged; as—*halb Paris*, half Paris; *halb Frankreich*, half France.

By compounding the ordinal numerals with *halb*, the following indeclinable fractionals are formed:—

anderthalb, one and a half (used for *zweitehalb*).
drittehalb, two and a half.
vierttehalb, three and a half.
fünftehalb, four and a half, &c.

Examples:—*Drei Drittel*, two-thirds; *drei Fünftel*, three-fifths; *anderthalb Zoll*, one inch and a half; *drittehalb Meilen*, two miles and a half; *vier und drei Viertel Pfund*, four pounds and three quarters.

§ 132. The *hours of the day* are indicated in the following manner:—

es ist fünf Uhr, it is five o'clock.

" " *ein Viertel auf sechs*, it is a quarter past five.

" " *halb sechs*, it is half-past five.

" " *drei Viertel auf sechs*, it is a quarter to six.

" " *in zehn Minuten sechs*, it wants ten minutes to six.

" " *fünf Minuten nach or über sechs*, it is five minutes past six.

EXERCISE XXXV.

Frederick-William¹ the Third was born² in the year³ 1770, and ascended⁴ the Prussian⁵ throne⁶ in the year 1797. He died on the⁷ seventh of June⁸ 1840. Stettin, the 12th of May⁹ 1853. Edinburgh, the 21st of January¹⁰ 1854. Three-fifths are wanting.¹¹ One-third of a hundredweight¹² is wanting. Half a pound of meat. Half a dozen¹³ of apricots.¹⁴

¹ Frederick-William, Friedrich Wilhelm. ² Was born, wurde geboren.
³ In the year, im Jahre. ⁴ To ascend, bestiegen. ⁵ Prussian, Preussisch.
⁶ Throne, Thron. ⁷ On the, am. ⁸ June, Juni. ⁹ May, Mai; use the accusative. ¹⁰ January, Januar. ¹¹ To be wanting, fehlen. ¹² Hundredweight, Centner. ¹³ Dozen, Duzend, n. ¹⁴ Apricot, Aprikose.

I shall wait half an hour. We can reach¹⁵ the town in an hour and a half. The place¹⁶ is three miles¹⁷ and a half from here.¹⁸ It is seven o'clock. It is half-past twelve. It is a quarter to nine. It is a quarter past eight. It wants ten minutes to five. It is six minutes past two. I rise¹⁹ at²⁰ half-past six. The steam-boat²¹ arrives²² at a quarter to three.

¹⁵ To reach, erreichen. ¹⁶ Place, Ort. ¹⁷ Mile, Meile. ¹⁸ From here, von hier. ¹⁹ To rise, aufstehen. ²⁰ At, um. ²¹ Steam-boat, Dampfschiff. ²² To arrive, ankommen.

III. INDEFINITE NUMERALS.

§ 133. The following words are comprised under the class of indefinite numerals :—

—kein, keine, kein, no, not any.
 jeder, e, es, }
old { jeglicher, e, es, } every, each.
 { jedweder, e, es, }
 aller, e, es, all.
 mancher, e, es, many a, some.
 einige, }
old { etliche, } some.
 viel, much.
 wenig, little, few.

These are all declined as adjectives, under certain restrictions in some particular cases, which will be noticed in their proper places.

§ 134. *Kein, keine, kein*, no, not any, none, is declined after the strong declension of adjectives; but, when followed by a noun, it loses, like the indefinite article *ein*, its termination in the nominative singular of the masculine, and in the nominative and accusative singular of the neuter gender. For example :—*Kein Freund*, no friend. *Haben Sie kein Geld?* Have you no money? *Nein, ich habe keines* (or *keins*), no, I have none. *Sie hat keine Kinder*, she has no children. *Keiner* is also used substantively for *Niemand*, nobody, no person. (See § 127.)

§ 135. *Jeder, jede, jedes*, or with the indefinite article, *ein jeder, eine jede, ein jedes*, is used both adjectively ('every, each')

and substantively ('everybody'). It can only be employed in the singular number. For example:—*Jedes Land hat seine eigenthümlichen Gebräuche*, every country has its peculiar customs. *Ein jeder ist seines Glückes Schmied*, everybody is the artificer of his own fortune. *Jeglicher, e, es, or ein jeglicher, eine jegliche, ein jegliches*, and *jedweder, e, es*, have the same meaning as *jeder*, but are not so generally used.

§ 136. *Aller, alle, alles, all*, denotes number as well as quantity, and is used both adjectively and substantively. For example:—*Willkommen waren alle Gäste*, all guests were welcome. *Alle sind krank*, all are ill. *Alles Geld ist ausgegeben*, all money has been spent. *Er weiß Alles*, he knows everything. The definite article, which in English is often placed between 'all' and the substantive, is not expressed in German, except when it has the force of a demonstrative pronoun. *Alle Einwohner der Stadt begleiteten seine Leiche*, all the inhabitants of the town attended his funeral.

Note.

Ganz, whole, differs from *all*, inasmuch as it expresses the complete and undivided state of an object, or of a unity consisting of parts, without in the least referring to the number of individual parts constituting the whole. The English employ 'all' as well as 'whole' in this sense. For example:—*das ganze Haus*, the whole house; *ein ganzes Jahr*, a whole year; *mein ganzer Körper*, my whole body; *die ganze Familie*, all the family; *den ganzen Tag*, all day. Before proper names of countries and places, when used without the definite article, *ganz* is not declined; e. g.—*ganz Griechenland*, all Greece; *in ganz Wien*, in all Vienna.

§ 137. *Mancher, manche, manches, many a, some*, signifies an indefinite plurality. It is used both in the singular and plural, with or without a substantive. For instance:—*Mancher Mensch glaubt*, or *Mancher glaubt*, many a one believes. *Manche Menschen behaupten*, or *Manche behaupten*, many or some people assert. *Er hat manches Unglück erfahren*, he has met with many a misfortune.

§ 138. *Einige, some, a few*, signifies a small number of persons or things indefinitely, and is generally used in the plural, either with or without a substantive; as—*einige Menschen or Einige behaupten*, some people, or some assert. When employed in the singular before names of materials and abstract nouns, it denotes an indefinite small quantity; as—*einiges Holz*, some wood; *einige Hoffnung*, some hope.

The indefinite pronoun *etwas* can also be used in this case; as—*etwas Geld*, some money; *etwas Glück*, some luck.

Etliche has much the same meaning as *einige*, but is less common.

Note.

In familiar conversation, the word *welcher*, *c*, *cß*, is not unfrequently employed for the English 'some,' in reference to an object previously mentioned. For example:—*Es ist kein Reis im Hause, ich will welchen bestellen*, there is no rice in the house, I am going to order some.

§ 139. *Viel*, much, many, and *wenig*, little, few, denote, the former a large, and the latter a small number or quantity. When they refer to quantity, they are generally not declined; as in—*er trinkt viel Wasser, aber wenig Wein*, he drinks much water, but little wine. When, on the contrary, they point out a number, they are ^{generally} always declined if used substantively; as in—*Viele waren eingeladen worden, aber Wenige waren gekommen*, many had been invited, but few had come. But if used adjectively, they are sometimes declined, sometimes left unchanged; e.g.—*er hat viele Freunde*, he has many friends. *Maria hat noch viel verborgene Freunde*, Mary still has many secret friends. *Wenige Jahre können Vieles ändern*, a few years can change many things. *In wenig Stunden kann die Nachricht da sein*, in a few hours the news can be here.

EXERCISE XXXVI.

I have no money about me.¹ You must lose no time. Can you lend [to] me some sealing-wax?² No; I have none.³ I have many books, but he has none.⁴ Every language has its beauties. Every science⁵ has its principles.⁶ We observed⁷ every one by turns.⁸ All men⁹ are liable to error.¹⁰ He lives at peace¹¹ with all men. All are lost. Who can know everything? All the country (say, the whole country) was full of his praise.¹² I have slept all night (say, the whole night). All Spain (say, whole Spain¹³) took¹⁴ arms

¹ About me, *bei mir*. ² Some sealing-wax, *etwas Siegellack*. ³ None, *keins*, n. ⁴ None, *keine*, plur. ⁵ Science, *Wissenschaft*. ⁶ Principle, *Grundsatz*. ⁷ To observe, *beobachten*. ⁸ By turns, *nach der Reihe*. ⁹ Men, *Menschen*. ¹⁰ Liable to error, *dem Irrthum unterworfen*. ¹¹ At peace, *in Frieden*. Arrange, 'with all men at peace.' ¹² Full of his praise, *voll von seinem Lobe*. ¹³ Spain, *Spanien*. ¹⁴ Took arms, *ergriff die Waffen*.

against¹⁵ the usurper.¹⁶ Many a one has made the experiment.¹⁷ Some think¹⁸ it wrong. I want¹⁹ some steel-pens.²⁰ Here is beer; will you have some?²¹ No, I thank²² you; I have already had (say, drunk) some. He spends²³ much money. I have little time for amusements.²⁴ He has read a great deal.²⁵ Many read, but few read with profit.²⁶ This week much rain²⁷ has fallen (say, is much rain fallen). Many *persons* like²⁸ tea better than coffee. He has many acquaintances,²⁹ but few friends.

¹⁵ Against, gegen; governs the accusative. ¹⁶ Usurper, Usurpator. ¹⁷ Experiment, Versuch, m. ¹⁸ Think it wrong, halten es für unrecht. ¹⁹ To want, brauchen. ²⁰ Steel-pen, Stahlfeder. ²¹ See § 138, note. ²² To thank, danken; governs the dative. ²³ To spend, ausgeben. ²⁴ For amusements, zu Vergnügungen. ²⁵ A great deal, sehr viel. ²⁶ With profit, mit Nutzen. ²⁷ Rain, Regen. ²⁸ Like better, trinfen lieber. ²⁹ Acquaintances, Bekannte.

XIX.

ADVERBS.

§ 140. Adverbs are words which modify the ideas expressed by verbs, adjectives, or other adverbs; as in—*ſie ſingt ſchön*, she sings beautifully; *er iſt gefährlich krank*, he is dangerously ill; *wir ſchreiten ſehr langſam vorwärts*, we advance very slowly. Adverbs express relations of place, time, manner, intensity, and mood. They are indeclinable.

§ 141. The following adverbs, among others, express place and direction:—

| | | | |
|---------------------------------------|--|-------------------------|--------------|
| hier, here; | | außen, | } without; — |
| da, there; | | draußen, | |
| dort, there, yonder; | | innen, | } within; — |
| her, hither (towards the speaker); | | drinnen, | |
| hin, thither (away from the speaker); | | drin (fam.), | |
| wo, where; | | drüben, on that side; | |
| — oben, above; | | hüben, on this side; | |
| — unten, below; | | — rechts, on the right; | |
| — vorn, before; | | — links, on the left; | |
| — hinten, behind; | | zurück, back; | |
| | | weg, | } away; |
| | | fort, | |

rückwärts, backward ;
 vorwärts, forward ;
 seitwärts, aside ;
 rings, around ;

überall, everywhere ;
 irgendwo, anywhere ;
 nirgend, nowhere, &c.

Note.

Ger and hin are frequently joined with prepositions or adverbs, to express at once the motion of an object, and the direction of the motion with regard to the position of the speaker. For example:—Er kam herauf, he came up, that is, to where I am. Er ging hinauf, he went up, that is, away from where I am. Gehen Sie hinaus, go out, away from me. Kommen Sie heraus, come out, towards me. In the same way hinein and herein, hinunter and herunter, wohin and woher, and others are formed.

EXERCISE XXXVII.

Yonder dwells Mr H. There he is (say, is he) himself.¹ Here is your account.² Come here (say, hither). Go there (say, thither). Come up.³ Go up.⁴ We must go in.⁵ You must come in.⁶ I shall go down stairs.⁷ Where did you see (say, have you seen) him? Whence⁸ did he come? Whither⁹ did he go? On the left is the dining-room;¹⁰ on the right, a study.¹¹ The bedrooms¹² are up-stairs.¹³ He has been everywhere. I cannot find him anywhere.¹⁴

¹ See § 116, note. ² Account, Rechnung. ³ Up, herauf. ⁴ Up, hinauf. ⁵ In, hinein. ⁶ In, herein. ⁷ Down stairs, hinunter. ⁸ Whence, woher. Separate wo and her, and put 'did he come' between. ⁹ Whither, wohin. Separate wo and hin, and put 'did he go' between. ¹⁰ Dining-room, Speisezimmer. ¹¹ Study, Studirstube. ¹² Bedroom, Schlafzimmer. ¹³ Up-stairs, oben. ¹⁴ Not anywhere, nirgend. Arrange, 'I can him nowhere find.'

§ 142. The following adverbs express time:—

- | | |
|----------------------------|------------------------|
| — dann, then ; | — immer, always ; |
| — damals, at that time ; | — stets, constantly ; |
| — wann, when ; | — nie, } never ; |
| — jetzt, now, at present ; | — niemals, } |
| — nun, now, under these | — nimmer, } |
| circumstances ; | — einst, once ; |
| — vorher, before ; | — noch, still, yet ; |
| — nachher, afterwards ; | — bald, soon ; |
| — sonst, formerly ; | — früh, early ; |
| — bisher, hitherto ; | — spät, late ; |
| — je, } | — schon, } |
| — jemals, } ever ; | — bereits, } already ; |

lange, long ;
 gestern, yesterday ;
 vorgestern, the day before
 yesterday ;
 heute, to-day ;
 morgen, to-morrow ;
 übermorgen, the day after
 to-morrow ;

eben, just, just now ;
 neulich, lately ;
 zugleich, at the same time ;
 unterdessen, in the meantime ;
 oft, often ;
 selten, seldom, &c.

EXERCISE XXXVIII.

When did it happen ? We are at present in mourning.¹ What is now (that is, under these circumstances) to be done ?² I shall afterwards examine³ the accounts. Mr A. was formerly a prosperous⁴ man. You always guess⁵ my intentions.⁶ One never finds him (say, finds him never) at home. He is constantly travelling about.⁷ Is she still alive ?⁸ He rises⁹ early and goes to bed¹⁰ late. It will soon strike four. Have you already seen the new comedy ?¹¹ It rained¹² yesterday and the day before yesterday. To-day the weather has improved.¹³ Will you be at home to-morrow ?¹⁴ Visit me the day after to-morrow. The letter-box¹⁵ has just been closed.¹⁶ Have you often been in Scotland ?¹⁷ We see each other very seldom.

¹ In mourning, in Trauer. ² To be done, zu thun. ³ To examine, nachsehen. ⁴ Prosperous, wohlhabend. ⁵ To guess, errathen. Arrange, 'you guess always.' ⁶ Intention, Absicht, f. ⁷ Travelling about, auf Reisen. ⁸ Alive, am Leben. ⁹ To rise, aufstehen. ¹⁰ To bed, zu Bett. Arrange, 'late to bed.' ¹¹ Comedy, Lustspiel. ¹² To rain, regnen. ¹³ To improve, sich bessern. Arrange, 'to-day has itself the weather improved.' ¹⁴ Arrange, 'will you to-morrow at home be?' ¹⁵ Letter-box, Briefkasten. ¹⁶ To close, schließen. ¹⁷ Scotland, Schottland.

§ 143. The following adverbs, among many others, express manner :—

so, so, thus ;
 eben so, just as ;
 wie, as, how ;
 anders, otherwise ;
 / vergebens, } in vain ;
 umsonst, }

schriftlich, by writing ;
 mündlich, orally ;
 eidlich, upon oath ;
 treulich, faithfully ;
 blindlings, blindly ;
 flehentlich, suppliantly, &c.

Besides these, almost all adjectives are used also as

adverbs ; as—schnell, quickly ; langsam, slowly ; laut, loudly ; leise, lowly, gently ; schön, beautifully, &c.

§ 144. Adverbs of the latter description are capable of comparison—that is, may have a comparative and superlative.

1. The comparative is formed in the same manner as the comparative of adjectives, namely, by affixing er ; as—schneller, more quickly ; schöner, more beautifully ; lauter, louder.

2. The relative superlative (or superlative of comparison) is formed by prefixing am, ‘at the . . .,’ and adding sten to the simple adverb ; as—am schnellsten, (at the) quickest ; am schönsten, (at the) finest ; am lautesten, (at the) loudest. Examples :—Wer kann am schnellsten laufen ? who can run quickest ? Er schreibt am schönsten von allen, he writes best of all.

3. The absolute superlative (or superlative of eminence) can be expressed in various ways :—

a. The adverb can be joined to another adverb denoting a high degree, such as sehr, recht, höchst, äußerst, außerordentlich, ungemein. For example :—Sie tanzt sehr schön, she dances very beautifully. Seine Gesundheit stellte sich wieder her, aber äußerst langsam, his health improved again, but exceedingly slowly.

b. The neuter of the attributive form of the superlative with the preposition auf preceding it, is employed for the same end ; as—auf das grausamste, or contracted auf's grausamste, most cruelly, in a most cruel manner. Examples :—Ich wurde auf das freundlichste begrüßt, I was most courteously received. Die Bauern waren auf das elendeste bewaffnet, the peasants were most miserably armed. Er besorgt seine Geschäfte auf's gewissenhafteste, he attends to his business most conscientiously.

c. The simple form of the superlative in st without inflection is exclusively employed in the sense of the absolute superlative, but its use is limited to adverbs ending in ig, lich, sam, and a few others. For example :—Sie wurde innigst geliebt, she was most intensely loved. Er läßt freundlichst grüßen, he desires to be most kindly remembered. With adverbs of this description, however, the other two forms of the absolute superlative are also used.

Notes.

1. The following two adverbs of manner make their comparative and superlative from other stems:—wohl or gut, well; comp. besser, better; superl. am besten, best; and gern, willingly, gladly; comp. lieber, more willingly, rather; superl. am liebsten, most willingly.

2. A few adverbs of time also have a comparative and superlative: namely—früh, early, früher, am frühesten; spät, late, später, am spätesten. oft, often, öfter, am öftesten; selten, seldom, seltener, am seltensten; lange, long, länger, am langsten. Bald, soon, has eher, am ehesten. Such superlatives as frühestens, not before; spätestens, at the latest; langstens, at the longest, &c., are used only in these peculiar significations.

EXERCISE XXXIX.

He walks¹ thus. How does he conduct² himself? You exert³ yourself in vain. We shall inform⁴ you by writing. He rushes⁵ blindly into⁶ every danger.⁷ Walk slow. Speak loud. Write distinctly.⁸ You must walk slower. You must speak louder. You must write more distinctly. I walk faster⁹ than thou. Which of¹⁰ the boys reads most correctly?¹¹ Which of the sisters works¹² most diligently?¹³ She sings very beautifully. The wind¹⁴ blows¹⁵ with exceeding violence (say, exceedingly violently¹⁶). I have written the translation¹⁷ most carefully.¹⁸ The rooms are most splendidly¹⁹ furnished.²⁰ My parents²¹ desire²² to be most kindly remembered. The prince thanked most graciously.²³

- ¹ To walk, gehen. ² To conduct one's self, sich betragen. ³ To exert one's self, sich bemühen. ⁴ To inform, benachrichtigen. ⁵ To rush, sich stürzen. ⁶ Into, in, with the accusative. ⁷ Danger, Gefahr, f. ⁸ Distinctly, deutlich. ⁹ Fast, schnell. ¹⁰ Of, von, with the dative. ¹¹ Correctly, richtig. ¹² To work, arbeiten. ¹³ Diligently, fleißig. ¹⁴ Wind, Wind. ¹⁵ To blow, wehen. ¹⁶ Violently, heftig. ¹⁷ Translation, Uebersetzung. ¹⁸ Carefully, sorgfältig. ¹⁹ Splendidly, prachtvoll. ²⁰ To furnish, möbliren. ²¹ Parents, Eltern. ²² Desire to be remembered, lassen . . . grüßen. ²³ Graciously, gnädig.

§ 145. The following adverbs express intensity:—

| | |
|------------------------|------------------------------------|
| sehr, } very ; | fast, almost ; |
| gar, } very ; | beinahe, nearly ; |
| sogar, } even ; | kaum, scarcely ; |
| auch, } even ; | nur, only ; |
| recht, right, very ; | weit, far ; |
| böchst, most ; | bei weitem, by far ; |
| äußerst, extremely ; | zu, too ; |
| überaus, exceedingly ; | einigermassen, in some degree, &c. |

EXERCISE XL.

It is very improbable,¹ nay,² it is almost impossible.³ I am extremely sorry.⁴ We are exceedingly happy.⁵ Our stores⁶ are nearly exhausted.⁷ I had almost forgotten it. I relate⁸ only what I have heard from others.⁹ We have scarcely begun.¹⁰ You work too slowly. My father is far older than my mother. He has succeeded¹¹ in some degree.

¹ Improbable, unwahrscheinlich. ² Nay, nein. ³ Impossible, unmöglich.
⁴ I am sorry, es thut mir . . . leid. ⁵ Happy, glücklich. ⁶ Store, Vorrath.
⁷ To exhaust, erschöpfen. ⁸ To relate, erzählen. ⁹ From others, von Andern.
¹⁰ To begin, anfangen. ¹¹ He has succeeded, es ist ihm . . . gelungen.

§. 146. The following adverbs express mood — that is, affirmation, negation, possibility, or necessity:—

| | |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| ja, yes; | keineswegs, by no means; |
| ja wohl, yes, certainly; | gar nicht, } not at all; |
| wirklich, really; | durchaus nicht, } |
| gewiß, surely; | vielleicht, } |
| fürwahr, } truly; | wohl, } perhaps; |
| wahrlich, } | etwa, } |
| war, } it is true, certainly, | wahrscheinlich, probably; |
| freilich, } indeed (concessive); | durchaus, } absolutely; |
| nein, no; | schlechterdings, } |
| nicht, not; | allerdings, by all means, &c. |

EXERCISE XLI.

His negligence¹ is really intolerable.² He has come indeed (say, he is indeed come), but too late. He certainly makes (say, he makes certainly) little progress,³ but he does his best.⁴ He is by no means so industrious⁵ as you believe. I am not at all satisfied with his conduct.⁶ You are perhaps not strict⁷ enough. Probably I have (say, have I) misunderstood⁸ you. I must absolutely insist⁹ upon¹⁰ implicit¹¹ obedience.¹²

¹ Negligence, Nachlässigkeit. ² Intolerable, unerträglich. ³ Little progress, wenig Fortschritte. ⁴ His best, sein Möglichstes. ⁵ Industrious, fleißig. ⁶ Satisfied with his conduct, mit seinem Betragen zufrieden.
⁷ Strict, streng. ⁸ To misunderstand, missverstehen. ⁹ To insist, bestehen.
¹⁰ Upon, auf, with the accusative. ¹¹ Implicit, unbedingt. ¹² Obedience, Gehorsam.

XX.

PREPOSITIONS.

§ 147. Prepositions are words which, by being put before nouns, indicate the relation of place in which an action is performed. Some prepositions also express relations of time, manner, cause, &c. While they are themselves indeclinable, they exercise an influence upon the noun with which they are connected, by causing it to be put in a particular case.

As to their origin, the prepositions are either *genuine* or *spurious*. The former class comprises all original prepositions; the latter, all those which are derived from other kinds of words, and compound expressions which have assumed the power of prepositions.

I. GENUINE PREPOSITIONS.

§ 148. The following seven govern the dative:—
auß, out of, from (motion). *also: motion* *er thut es an*
außer, out of, without (rest); except, besides.
~~+~~ bei, ~~at~~, ~~by~~, near, with (nearness). *vicinity* *er wohnt bei*
mit, with (company, and instrumentality). *ich habe Geld*
nach, to (motion to a place); after; according to. *er ist bei*
von, of, from. *stube*
zu, to (motion to a person); at, in; for (purpose).

EXERCISE XLII.

The boys come from school¹ (say, out of the school). The cook² is fetching³ potatoes⁴ out of the cellar.⁵ We were from home (say, out of the house). Except my sisters, nobody was (say, was nobody) at home. We live near⁶ the town. I have no money about⁷ me. He dines⁸ at⁹ his brother-in-law's.¹⁰ They travelled with us from Vienna¹¹ to Munich.¹² I shall take a walk¹³ with a friend. Do you

¹ School, Schule. ² Cook, Köchin. ³ To fetch, holen. ⁴ Potato, Kartoffel, f. ⁵ Cellar, Keller. ⁶ Near, nahe bei. ⁷ About, bei. ⁸ To dine, speisen. ⁹ At, bei. ¹⁰ Brother-in-law, Schwager. ¹¹ Vienna, Wien. ¹² Munich, München. ¹³ To take a walk, einen Spaziergang machen.

nach Berlin.

zu meinem Nutzen

write with steel-pens ?¹⁴ The war¹⁵ was [being] carried on¹⁶ with great bitterness.¹⁷ My father must go on business¹⁸ to Belgium¹⁹ and Germany. I shall directly²⁰ set out²¹ for²² Paris. Some people²³ take a short sleep²⁴ after [the] dinner.²⁵ It is half-past four by²⁶ my watch. We come from Basle²⁷ and go to Brussels.²⁸ When will your father return²⁹ from his journey ?³⁰ Did you buy (say, have you bought) the goods³¹ from the manufacturer ?³² We spoke of you. These dances³³ are composed³⁴ by³⁵ Lanner. I shall come to you. For what (say, which) end³⁶ does your brother go (say, travel) to the Continent ?³⁷ He is going³⁸ to study at Heidelberg.

- ¹⁴ Steel-pen, Stahlfeder, f. ¹⁵ War, Krieg, n. ¹⁶ To carry on, führen.
¹⁷ Bitterness, Bitterkeit, f. ¹⁸ On business, in Geschäften, n. ¹⁹ Belgium, Belgien.
²⁰ Directly, sogleich. ²¹ To set out, abreisen. ²² For, nach.
²³ Some people, manche Leute. ²⁴ Take a short sleep, machen ein Schläfchen.
²⁵ Dinner, Mittagessen, n. ²⁶ By, nach. ²⁷ Basle, Basel. ²⁸ Brussels, Brüssel.
²⁹ To return, zurückkehren. ³⁰ Journey, Reise, f. ³¹ Goods, Waaren.
³² Manufacturer, Fabrikant. ³³ Dance, Tanz, n. ³⁴ To compose, componiren.
³⁵ By, von. ³⁶ End, Zweck, m. ³⁷ Continent, Continent, m. ³⁸ Is going, will.

§ 149. The following five govern the accusative :—

durch, through.

für, for (in the place of, for the benefit of a person).

gegen, towards, against (denoting an amicable as well as hostile relation).

wider, against (denoting a hostile relation only).

um, round, about.

EXERCISE XLIII.

The railroad goes through a long tunnel.¹ Through whose influence² has your friend obtained³ his appointment ?⁴ We buy our goods for ready⁵ money. My uncle⁶ has bought a gold⁷ watch for his niece.⁸ We expect him towards noon.⁹ He forgets his obligations¹⁰ to (say, towards) his benefactors.¹¹ The troops¹² advanced¹³ against the enemy. He

- ¹ Tunnel, Tunnel, m. ² Influence, Einfluß. ³ To obtain, erhalten.
⁴ Appointment, Anstellung. ⁵ Ready, baar. ⁶ Uncle, Onkel. ⁷ Gold (adjective), golden.
⁸ Niece, Nichte. ⁹ Noon, Mittag. ¹⁰ Obligation, Verbindlichkeit.
¹¹ Benefactor, Wohlthäter. ¹² Troops, Truppen. ¹³ To advance, vorrücken.

they govern passive when we indicate the
 within which the action occurs
 they govern accus. **PREPOSITIONS.** when we indicate
 at another place, when by the action the sub.
 swims against the stream.¹⁴ The ivy¹⁵ winds¹⁶ [itself] round

denken an die Sache.
 schreiben an
 adressiren an
 sich wenden an

} accusative

hoffen auf - hope for.
 warten auf - wait for
 sich verlassen auf - depend on
 rechnen auf - count on

} accusative

lachen über
 sprechen über
 spotten über
 sich freuen über
 sich ärgern über

} accusative

schützen vor - protect from -
 behüten vor guard from.
 bewahren vor preserve from

} Dative.

es schützt vor dem Regen.

er wickelt sich in das Tuch -

write with steel-pens ?¹⁴ The war¹⁵ was [being] carried on¹⁶
 with great bitterness¹⁷ My father must go on business¹⁸ to

Be

Pa

din

fro

ret

bo

yo

cor

go

at

¹⁴ f¹⁷ f²² S²⁵ I²⁸ r³² h³⁴ E

f

f

f

f

f

f

f

inf

buy

gold

He

tors

1

Ap

(adj

Bert

adva

they govern accusative when we indicate the
 within which the action occurs
 they govern accusative when we indicate
 another place, when by the action the sub-
 swims against the stream.¹⁴ The ivy¹⁵ winds¹⁶ [itself] round
 the tree. Our holidays¹⁷ begin¹⁸ about Whitsuntide.¹⁹ The
 sun sets²⁰ to-day at²¹ six o'clock.

- ¹⁴ Stream, Strom. ¹⁵ Ivy, Efeu, m. ¹⁶ To wind one's self, sich schlängeln.
¹⁷ Holidays, Ferien. ¹⁸ To begin, anfangen. ¹⁹ Whitsuntide, Pfingsten.
²⁰ To set, untergehen; the prefix is separable. ²¹ At, um.

§ 150. The following seven genuine prepositions sometimes govern the dative, and sometimes the accusative: the former, when they denote rest, or being in a place; and the latter, when they denote motion. For example:—Das Bild hängt an der Wand, the picture hangs on the wall. Ich hänge das Bild an die Wand, I hang the picture up on the wall. Das Buch liegt auf dem Tische, the book lies upon the table. Ich habe das Buch auf den Tisch gelegt, I have put the book upon the table.

an, on, at.

auf, upon (on the top or surface).

hinter, behind.

neben in, in, into. *by the side* —

über, over, above, beyond; about, concerning.

unter, under, below, beneath; among.

vor, before, ago

zwischen between

✕ EXERCISE XLIV. ✕

London lies on the Thames.¹ I sat on the bank² of the river. Move³ the table to (say, on) the wall.⁴ I have put⁵ the inkstand⁶ upon the table. The newspaper lies upon the table. The light-house⁷ stands upon the top⁸ of the rock.⁹ Sit down¹⁰ upon the chair.¹¹ The village lies behind the hill.¹² Place¹³ yourself behind me. Is Mr M. in the dining-room?¹⁴ No, he is gone into the garden. I stayed¹⁵ three days at (say, in) Weimar. She poured¹⁶ wine into the glass. A dark¹⁷ cloud¹⁸ hovers¹⁹ over that mountain. The

- ¹ Thames, Themse, f. ² Bank, Ufer. ³ To move, rücken. ⁴ Wall, Wand.
⁵ To put, setzen. ⁶ Inkstand, Tintenfaß. ⁷ Light-house, Leuchtturm.
⁸ Top, Spitze. ⁹ Rock, Felsen. ¹⁰ To sit down, sich setzen. ¹¹ Chair, Stuhl.
¹² Hill, Hügel. ¹³ To place, stellen. ¹⁴ Dining-room, Esszimmer. ¹⁵ To stay, sich aufhalten. ¹⁶ To pour, gießen. ¹⁷ Dark, dunkel. ¹⁸ Cloud, Wolke.
¹⁹ To hover, schweben.

er nickelt sich in das Fuch —

branches²⁰ of the trees grow over the garden-wall.²¹ The horse leaped²² over the hedge.²³ The battle²⁴ lasted²⁵ upwards of (say, over) twelve hours. A bridge²⁶ was [being] thrown²⁷ across²⁸ the river. I have spoken with my father about²⁹ our journey. The dog lies under the chair. The dog creeps³⁰ under the chair. He is a wolf³¹ among the sheep. The booty³² was [being] divided³³ among the soldiers.³⁴ A little garden is before the house. The criminals³⁵ were [being] brought before the judge.³⁶ Before my departure³⁷ to France, I have (say, have I) still many things³⁸ to arrange.³⁹ The castle was [being] built three hundred years ago (say, before three hundred years⁴⁰).

- ²⁰ Branch, Zweig. ²¹ Garden-wall, Gartenmauer. ²² To leap, springen. ²³ Hedge, Hecke. ²⁴ Battle, Schlacht. ²⁵ To last, dauern. ²⁶ Bridge, Brücke. ²⁷ To throw, schlagen. ²⁸ Across, über. ²⁹ About, über, with the accusative. ³⁰ To creep, kriechen. ³¹ Wolf, Wolf. ³² Booty, Beute. ³³ To divide, theilen. ³⁴ Soldiers, Soldaten. ³⁵ Criminal, Verbrecher. ³⁶ Judge, Richter. ³⁷ Departure, Abreise; use the dative. ³⁸ Still many things, noch Vieles. ³⁹ To arrange, zu besorgen. ⁴⁰ Dative.

II. SPURIOUS PREPOSITIONS.

§ 151. The following govern the genitive:—

statt or anstatt, instead of.

außerhalb, without, on the outside of.

innerhalb, within.

oberhalb, above.

unterhalb, below.

diesseit or diesseits, on this side of.

jenseit or jenseits, on the other side of.

wegen, on account of (preceding or following the case).

halben or halber, on account of (follows the case).

um . . . willen, for the sake of (the case being inserted between um and willen).

frast, by virtue of.

vermöge, by virtue of.

laut, conformably to.

vermittelft, by means of.

ungeachtet, notwithstanding (preceding or following the case).

* trotz, in spite of (is used also with the dative).

unweit or unfern, not far from.

und des Geldes willen

mährend, during.

längs, along (is used also with the dative).

zufolge, according to (either precedes or follows the noun; in the latter case it governs the dative).

EXERCISE XLV.

I transmit¹ a copy² of the certificate³ instead of the original.⁴ Our cousin lives out of [the] town on this side of the river above the bridge. We inhabit⁵ a small country-house⁶ on the other side of the Elbe. On account of the important⁷ services⁸ which he has rendered⁹ to the state,¹⁰ a considerable¹¹ pension¹² has been granted¹³ to him. The militia¹⁴ has been called out¹⁵ on account of the impending¹⁶ war. For the sake of peace,¹⁷ I renounce¹⁸ my claims. Three sailors¹⁹ reached²⁰ the shore²¹ by means of a boat.²² In spite of his illness²³ he is (say, is he) always cheerful.²⁴ Notwithstanding the darkness²⁵ of the night we found (say, found we) our (say, the) way. During my absence²⁶ my book-keeper²⁷ will (say, will my book-keeper) take charge²⁸ of the business.

¹ To transmit, überfenden; the prefix is inseparable. ² Copy, Abſchrift, f. ³ Certificate, Zeugniß. ⁴ Original, Original, n. ⁵ To inhabit, bewohnen. ⁶ Small country-house, Landhäuschen. ⁷ Important, wichtig. ⁸ Service, Dienst. ⁹ To render, leiſten. ¹⁰ State, Staat. ¹¹ Considerable, bedeutend. ¹² Pension, Gnadengehalt, n., or Penſion, f. ¹³ To grant, bewilligen. Arrange, 'has to him a considerable pension granted been.' ¹⁴ Militia, Landwehr, f. ¹⁵ To call out, zuſammen berufen. ¹⁶ Impending, bevorſtehend. ¹⁷ Peace, Friede. ¹⁸ I renounce my claims, begeben ſich mich meiner Ansprüche. ¹⁹ Sailor, Matroſe. ²⁰ To reach, erreichen. ²¹ Shore, Ufer. ²² Boat, Boot. ²³ Illness, Krankheit. ²⁴ Cheerful, heiter. ²⁵ Darkness, Dunkelheit. ²⁶ Absence, Abweſenheit. ²⁷ Book-keeper, Buchhalter. ²⁸ Take charge of the business, das Geſchäft führen.

§ 152. The following spurious prepositions govern the dative:—

binnen, within (in regard to time only).

gegenüber, opposite (is put after the case).

gemäß, according to, agreeably to (usually follows the case).

nächſt, next to.

nebst, along with.

sammt, together with.

ſeit, since.

gegenüber, contrary to (is put after the case).

EXERCISE XLVI.

I hope to be able to pay¹ the account within six months. The apothecary's shop² is opposite the town-hall.³ One must always act⁴ according to [the] reason.⁵ Messrs⁶ M. and N. have, next to Mr B., the most extensive⁷ publishing business⁸ in Leipzig. He has sold his house along with the shop.⁹ She has bequeathed¹⁰ the house together with all that is in it¹¹ to her nephew.¹² Since the first of January¹³ we have (say, have we) had very unsettled¹⁴ weather. That is contrary to [the] sound¹⁵ reason.

¹ To be able to pay, bezahlen zu können; goes to the end. ² Apothecary's shop, Apotheke. ³ Town-hall, Rathhaus. ⁴ To act, handeln. ⁵ Reason, Vernunft, f. ⁶ Messrs, die Herren. ⁷ Extensive, ausgedehnt. ⁸ Publishing business, Verlagsgeschäft. ⁹ Shop, Laden. ¹⁰ To bequeath, vermachen. ¹¹ That is in it, was darin ist. ¹² Nephew, Neffe. ¹³ January, Januar. ¹⁴ Unsettled, unbeständig. ¹⁵ Sound, gesund.

§ 153. The following three govern the accusative:—

bis, till, as far as (is used both with regard to place and time).

entlang, along (generally follows the noun).

ohne, without (is the opposite of mit).

Note.

Bis is frequently joined to another preposition; as—bis zu Thränen gerührt, moved even to tears; bis auf diesen Tag, up to this day; bis in den Tod, or bis zum Tode, even to death; bis zum Ende des Kapitels, down to the end of the chapter; bis an die Stadtthore, as far as the gates of the town; Alle bis auf einen, all except one.

§ 154. The following two govern sometimes the dative and sometimes the accusative, according as they denote rest or motion; namely—

neben, beside.

zwischen, between, betwixt.

EXERCISE XLVII.

They have put off¹ their departure² till next week. We shall go (say, travel) by (say, with) the steam-boat as far as (say, till) Mannheim. I walked³ along the river as far as⁴

¹ To put off, aufschieben.

² Departure, Abreise.

³ To walk, gehen.

⁴ As far as, bis an.

the wood.⁵ They were moved⁶ even to⁷ tears.⁸ He works⁹ without *either* plan¹⁰ or (say, and) object.¹¹ Who stood beside you? Sit down¹² beside me. Between thee and me *there* is no secret.¹³ He placed¹⁴ himself between us.

⁵ Wood, Wald. ⁶ Moved, gerührt. ⁷ Even to, bis zu. ⁸ Tear, Thräne.
⁹ To work, arbeiten. ¹⁰ Plan, Plan. ¹¹ Object, Zweck. ¹² To sit down, sich setzen. ¹³ Secret, Geheimniß. ¹⁴ To place, stellen.

XXI

CONJUNCTIONS.

§ 155. Conjunctions are words which connect clauses or sentences, and shew the relation in which they stand to one another. Those conjunctions which place clauses side by side as independent of one another, are termed *co-ordinative conjunctions*; whilst those which introduce a dependent clause, are termed *subordinative conjunctions*.

§ 156. The ~~most common~~ co-ordinative conjunctions are—~~und~~. *aber*. *allein*. *sondern* / *oder*. *denn*.

~~und~~, and;

~~aber~~,
~~allein~~, } but;

~~sondern~~, but (puts one thought in opposition to another thought, which is denied);

~~doch~~,
~~dennoch~~, } yet, still;
~~jedoch~~,

~~indessen~~, however;
~~sonst~~, else, otherwise;

~~denn~~, for;

~~daher~~, therefore;

~~deshalb~~,
~~deswegen~~, } on that account;
~~darum~~,

~~also~~,
~~folglich~~, } consequently;

~~oder~~, or;

~~entweder~~ ... ~~oder~~, either ... or;

~~weder~~ ... ~~noch~~, neither ... nor;

~~sowohl~~ ... ~~als~~, as well as, both ... and;

~~theils~~ ... ~~theils~~, partly ... partly;

~~balb~~ ... ~~balb~~, now ... then;

sometimes ... sometimes.

therefore we have been
will then answer

§ 157. Most co-ordinative conjunctions have the nature of adverbs, and therefore usually affect the structure of a sentence in the same manner as adverbs. Accordingly, if the conjunction is placed before the subject and the word containing the assertion, the order of the latter is inverted; e.g.—ich bin krank, deshalb kann ich nicht ausgehen, I am ill, on that account I cannot go out. But the 'pure' conjunctions und, aber, allein, sondern, oder, denn, exercise no influence whatever upon the arrangement of a sentence.

EXERCISE XLVIII.

[The] prosperity¹ gains² friends, and [the] adversity³ tries⁴ them. Mrs L. has invited⁵ us to⁶ a party,⁷ but we have not been able⁸ to accept⁹ her invitation.¹⁰ These soldiers have not served¹¹ in the infantry,¹² but in the cavalry.¹³ He has attained¹⁴ all his wishes,¹⁵ and yet he is (say, is he) not satisfied.¹⁶ Thou must be saving,¹⁷ else thou wilt (say, wilt thou) one day¹⁸ suffer want.¹⁹ I shall take an umbrella,²⁰ for it is going²¹ to rain. My father has sprained²² his right hand (say, to himself the right hand), therefore he cannot (say, can he not) write. Our physician²³ has advised [to] him to keep the room,²⁴ on that account he will (say, will he) not go out²⁵ to-day. Mr N. is either in the counting-house²⁶ or in the warehouse.²⁷ He can neither speak nor hear. He writes French as well as German with great ease.²⁸ He speaks now the one language, then the other (say, now the one, then the other language) with astonishing²⁹ fluency.³⁰ He has been educated³¹ partly in France, partly in Germany.

¹ Prosperity, Glück. ² To gain, erwerben. ³ Adversity, Unglück. ⁴ To try, prüfen. ⁵ To invite, bitten. ⁶ To, zu. ⁷ Party, Gesellschaft. ⁸ See § 58, note. ⁹ To accept, annehmen. ¹⁰ Invitation, Einladung. ¹¹ To serve, dienen. ¹² Infantry, Infanterie. ¹³ Cavalry, Cavalerie. ¹⁴ To attain, erreichen. ¹⁵ Wish, Wunsch. ¹⁶ Satisfied, zufrieden. ¹⁷ Saving, sparsam. ¹⁸ One day, einst. ¹⁹ To suffer want, Mangel leiden. ²⁰ Umbrella, Regenschirm. ²¹ It is going to rain, es will regnen. ²² To sprain, verrenken. ²³ Physician, Arzt. ²⁴ To keep the room, das Zimmer zu hüten. ²⁵ To go out, ausgehen. ²⁶ 'To-day' comes before 'not.' ²⁷ Counting-house, Comptoir, n. ²⁸ Warehouse, Speicher or Niederlage. ²⁹ Ease, Fertigkeit. ³⁰ Astonishing, erstaunlich. ³¹ To educate, erziehen.

negation is used only after a negation in the preceding sentence - when negation points distinctly to the other thing in the second sentence

§ 158. The following subordinative conjunctions occur in ordinary use:—

| | |
|----------------------------|---|
| daß, that ; | so bald (als), as soon as ; |
| damit, in order that ; | da, as, since (denotes time as well as cause) ; |
| ob, whether ; | weil, because ; |
| als, when, as ; | wie, as (comparing) ; |
| wenn, if, when, whenever ; | als ob, } as if ; |
| während, whilst ; | als wenn, } |
| indem, while, as ; | obgleich, } although. |
| so lange, as long as ; | obchon, } |
| nachdem, after ; | obwohl, } |
| ehe, before, ere ; | wenn auch, } |
| seit, } since ; | wenn gleich, } |
| seitdem, } | |
| bis, till ; | |

Note.

With regard to the conjunctions *als* and *wenn*, it should be observed, that *als* is used when a single definite past event is referred to ; but that *wenn* is employed to point out some indefinite or habitual occurrence, either in the past, or in the present, or in the future. For example:—*Als ich meinen Freund besuchte, fand ich ihn krank*, when I called upon my friend, I found him ill. *Wenn der Frühling beginnt, kehren die Schwärze zurück*, when spring begins, the swallows return. *Sonst, wenn der Vater auszog, liebe Kinder, da war ein Freuen, wenn er miederfam*, formerly, when your father went from home, dear children, there was rejoicing when he returned.

§ 159. As every clause which has a subordinative conjunction is of a subordinate or dependent nature, the verb is usually removed to the end, according to § 29. If the verb consists of two or more words, the inflected part goes even after the participle and infinitive. For example:—*Nachdem ich meinen Freund besucht hatte*, after I had called upon my friend. *Wenn er nicht zu Hause sein sollte*, if he should not be at home.

§ 160. When a dependent clause is put before the leading or principal one, the latter commonly assumes the inverted form—that is, the subject is placed after the word containing the assertion. For example:—*Nachdem ich meinen Freund besucht hatte, machte ich einen Spaziergang*, after I had called upon my friend, I took a walk. *Daß er nicht zu Hause sein würde, hatte ich erwartet*, that he would not be at home, I had expected.

§ 161. When a clause expressing a condition and beginning with *wenn*, if, precedes the principal clause to which it is made subordinate, the latter is not only put in the inverted form, but generally commences with the adverb *so*, which may be rendered in English by 'then.' For example:—*Wenn ein Ring bricht, so bricht die ganze Kette*, if one link breaks, (then) the whole chain breaks. The same construction is also often employed when a clause expressing a cause, and beginning with the conjunction *da*, as, or a clause expressing a concession, and having one of the conjunctions *obgleich*, *obchon*, &c., is made to precede the principal clause. In the latter case, the adverb *doch* or *dennoch*, yet, still, is inserted. For example:—*Da er ein Spanier ist, so muß er die spanische Sprache verstehen*, as he is a Spaniard, he must understand the Spanish language. *Obgleich das Wetter ungünstig war, so reiste er doch ab*, although the weather was unfavourable, yet he set out.

§ 162. Clauses expressing a condition frequently assume the inverted form, the conjunction *wenn* being dropped; as—*Hätte ich Zeit gehabt, so würde ich gekommen sein*, had I had time, I should have come. Concessive clauses, also, are sometimes put in the inverted form, the first member of the concessive conjunction being dropped, while the second member (*gleich* or *auch*) is inserted; as—*Wäre das Wetter auch ungünstig gewesen, so würden wir dennoch abgereist sein*, although the weather had been unfavourable, still we should have set out.

EXERCISE XLIX.

They say (say, one says) that a war has broken out.¹ I shall warn² him of³ the danger, in order that he may not rush⁴ into it blindly.⁵ I do not know whether the man has been acquitted.⁶ It struck seven when we arrived at L. When I awoke,⁷ I saw my friend standing (say, stand) before me. Every year, when the shooting-season⁸ begins,

¹ To break out, *ausbrechen*; use the conjunctive. ² To warn, *aufmerksam machen*. ³ Of, *auf*, with the accusative. ⁴ To rush into it, *sich hinein-stürzen*; use the conjunctive. ⁵ Blindly, *blindlings*. ⁶ To acquit, *freisprechen*. ⁷ To awake, *erwachen*. ⁸ Shooting-season, *Jagdzeit*.

we go for⁹ a few months to Scotland. If we act against [the] conscience,¹⁰ [then] we become the destroyers¹¹ of our own peace. He slept, whilst I was reading. She went up the stair,¹² leaning (say, while¹³ she leant¹⁴) upon my arm. We shall remain in [the] town, as long as the bad weather continues.¹⁵ After it has lightened,¹⁶ it thunders.¹⁷ We had (say, were) arrived¹⁸ at our journey's end,¹⁹ before the sun set.²⁰ Since there are²¹ railroads, there are also more travellers.²² Wait, till I have finished²³ my work.²⁴ As soon as we received the news,²⁵ we ordered²⁶ post-horses.²⁷ As the railway-train had been detained²⁸ by (say, through) an accident,²⁹ [so] the letters arrived³⁰ three hours later than usual.³¹ The snow³² melts,³³ because it rains. He speaks, as he thinks. He looks,³⁴ as if he had³⁵ no good conscience. Although his situation³⁶ is very lucrative,³⁷ yet he is going to (say, will) give³⁸ it up, as his health³⁹ has suffered from excessive work.⁴⁰ The soldiers did not murmur,⁴¹ although they had to endure⁴² many hardships.⁴³

⁹ For, auf, with the accusative. ¹⁰ Conscience, Gewissen, n. ¹¹ Destroyer, Zerstörer. ¹² Up the stair, die Treppe hinauf. ¹³ While, indem. ¹⁴ To lean, sich stützen. ¹⁵ To continue, anhalten. ¹⁶ To lighten, blitzen. ¹⁷ To thunder, donnern. ¹⁸ To arrive, anlangen. ¹⁹ At our journey's end, am Ziel unsrer Reise. ²⁰ To set, untergehen. ²¹ There are, es giebt. ²² More travellers, mehr Reisende. ²³ To finish, beendigen. ²⁴ Work, Arbeit, f. ²⁵ News, Nachricht, f. ²⁶ To order, bestellen. ²⁷ Post-horse, Postpferd. ²⁸ To detain, aufhalten. ²⁹ Accident, Unglücksfall. ³⁰ To arrive, ankommen. ³¹ Usual, gewöhnlich. ³² Snow, Schnee. ³³ To melt, schmelzen. ³⁴ To look, aussehen. ³⁵ Use the conditional of the present. ³⁶ Situation, Stelle. ³⁷ Lucrative, einträglich. ³⁸ To give up, aufgeben. ³⁹ Health, Gesundheit. ⁴⁰ From excessive work, durch übermäßiges Arbeiten. ⁴¹ To murmur, murren. ⁴² To endure, zu ertragen. ⁴³ Hardship, Beschwerte.

XXII.

INTERJECTIONS.

§ 163. Interjections are words or sounds expressing momentary feelings of joy, pain, wonder, abhorrence, &c. Joy, for instance, is expressed by ah! ha! heisa! juchhei! hurra!—pain or sorrow by ach! o! weh! o weh! wo is me!—wonder

by ei! ah! ha! oh!—abhorrence by pfui! fi!—doubt by hm! hem! &c. The following are used for calling out to a person:—he! heda! holla! pft!—for bidding silence: sch! ft! pft!—for agreeing to a proposal: topp!—to encourage: wohlan! well! roßlauf! cheer up! To these may be added the imitations of various sounds; as—bauz! knack! puff! hufch! plump! &c.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES.

[The following set of parallel exercises has been added in order to increase the usefulness of this work. They exactly correspond with those contained in the body of the grammar, and bear the same numbers. Before attempting any of them, the pupil will therefore have to master the rules which they exemplify, and to translate or go carefully over the original exercises, to which (both rules and exercises) frequent reference is made in the following pages.]

EXERCISE 1.—We have an apple¹ and a pear.² She had a horse and a carriage. Have you no time, Charles? I have no time and no patience. I had a sheep³ and you had a lamb.⁴ You would have no money. Have⁵ patience, Mary. Would he call upon you⁶ if he had time? Had she a looking-glass?⁷ We shall have a penknife.⁸ She would have bought a house⁹ if she had had money. We should take a walk,¹⁰ but¹¹ we have no time. Would you take a drive¹² if you had a carriage?

¹ An apple (*acc.*), einen Apfel. ² A pear, eine Birne. ³ A sheep, ein Schaf. ⁴ A lamb, ein Lamm. ⁵ Use the second person singular. ⁶ Would he call upon you? (see I. n. 15). ⁷ A looking-glass (*acc.*), einen Spiegel. ⁸ A penknife, ein Fectermesser. ⁹ She would have bought a house, sie würde ein Haus gekauft haben. ¹⁰ We should take a walk, wir würden spazieren gehen. ¹¹ But, aber. ¹² Would you take a drive? (see I. n. 20).

EXERCISE 2.—The mountain¹ is high, but the hill² is not high. The town³ was large,⁴ the village⁵ was small.⁶ The weather has been fine.⁷ The ditch⁸ will be deep. I was in the country⁹ and you were in town.¹⁰ Is your brother¹¹ unwell? No,¹² he is well. When¹³ will you be in Scotland?¹⁴ I should be happy if I were¹⁵ at home. My cousin¹⁶ and my brother were at school. Where is she? Had they been already there? When will they be at home? At three o'clock.¹⁷ Be¹⁸ quiet,¹⁹ Frederick. I should take a walk²⁰ if the weather were good.

¹ The mountain, der Berg. ² The hill, der Hügel. ³ The town, die Stadt. ⁴ Large, groß. ⁵ The village, das Dorf. ⁶ Small, klein. ⁷ Fine,

schön. ⁸ The ditch, *der Graben.* ⁹ In the country (see II. n. 13).
¹⁰ In town, in *der Stadt.* ¹¹ Your brother, *Ihr Bruder.* ¹² No, *nein.*
¹³ When, *wann.* ¹⁴ In Scotland, in *Schottland.* ¹⁵ Use the present conditional.
¹⁶ My cousin (*m.*), *mein Vetter.* ¹⁷ At three o'clock, *um drei Uhr.*
¹⁸ Use the second person singular. ¹⁹ Quiet, *still.* ²⁰ See above, I, n. 10.

EXERCISE 3.—The room¹ becomes warm. He became my friend.² The weather will become cold. Does his daughter³ become impatient? (say, Becomes his daughter). Will they become better?⁴ The merchant⁵ has become very⁶ rich. The children⁷ would become ill. The water would soon⁸ become warm if the fire⁹ were better. Would the illness¹⁰ become dangerous?¹¹ The boy¹² would have grown tall if he had not¹³ been ill. You would have become his enemy¹⁴ if you had become acquainted with him.¹⁵ My uncle¹⁶ says¹⁷ that the weather in Germany¹⁸ has become very warm.

¹ The room, *das Zimmer.* ² My friend, *mein Freund.* ³ His daughter, *seine Tochter.* ⁴ Better, *besser.* ⁵ The merchant, *der Kaufmann.* ⁶ Very, *sehr.* ⁷ The children, *die Kinder.* ⁸ Soon, *balb.* ⁹ The fire, *das Feuer.*
¹⁰ The illness, *die Krankheit.* ¹¹ Dangerous, *gefährlich.* ¹² The boy, *der Knabe.* ¹³ Not, *nicht.* ¹⁴ His enemy, *sein Feind.* ¹⁵ Acquainted with him (see III. n. 27). ¹⁶ My uncle, *mein Onkel.* ¹⁷ See III. n. 30, 28, and 31. ¹⁸ In Germany, in *Deutschland.*

EXERCISE 4.—Your¹ daughter hears us.² The teacher has worked³ the whole evening.⁴ My mother has praised me, but she has blamed⁵ my sister. Had they not built a new church?⁶ Where does your uncle live⁷ (say, lives your uncle)? He lives now⁸ in the country.⁹ He lived formerly¹⁰ in the town.¹¹ I shall ask him why¹² he laughs. He would still be alive¹³ if he had followed¹⁴ my advice.¹⁵ Would your parents¹⁶ have believed¹⁷ it¹⁸ if you had said it? Does he say (say, Says he) that he has learnt¹⁹ German and Italian?²⁰ Has thy friend²¹ Elizabeth said anything?²² No, she has said nothing.²³

¹ Your (*f.*), *Ihre.* ² Us, *uns.* ³ To work, *arbeiten.* ⁴ The whole evening (*acc. of time*), *den ganzen Abend.* ⁵ To blame, *tadeln.* ⁶ A new church, *eine neue Kirche.* ⁷ To live (to dwell), *wohnen.* ⁸ Now, *jetzt.*
⁹ In the country, *auf dem Lande.* ¹⁰ Formerly, *sonst.* ¹¹ In the town, in *der Stadt.* ¹² Why, *warum.* ¹³ To be alive, *leben.* ¹⁴ My advice (*acc.*), *meinen Rath.* ¹⁵ Followed, *befolgt.* ¹⁶ Your parents, *Ihre Eltern.*
¹⁷ To believe, *glauben.* ¹⁸ It, *es.* ¹⁹ Use the perfect conjunctive. ²⁰ German and Italian, *Deutsch und Italienisch.* ²¹ Thy friend (*f.*), *deine Freundin.* ²² Anything, *etwas.* ²³ Nothing, *nichts.*

EXERCISE 5.—It was raining this morning;¹ is it raining yet? I had counted upon him;² I have been³ wrong.⁴ Do not wait for me.⁵ We believed⁶ you.⁷ How long have you been waiting for my master?⁸ It has lightened⁹ the whole evening.¹⁰ I would

bathe¹¹ if the weather were warm and fine. Do not chatter¹² so much. How¹³ has she spelt¹⁴ that word?¹⁵ These two gentlemen¹⁶ have married¹⁷ sisters.¹⁸ How much¹⁹ does she earn weekly?²⁰ Strike²¹ the iron while it is hot.

¹ This morning (*acc. of time*), diesen Morgen, or heute morgen. ² Upon him, auf ihn. ³ Say, I have had. ⁴ Wrong, unecht. ⁵ For me, auf mich. ⁶ To believe, glauben. ⁷ You (say, to you), Ihnen. ⁸ For my master, auf meinen Lehrer. ⁹ To lighten, blitzen. ¹⁰ The whole evening (*acc. of time*), den ganzen Abend. ¹¹ To bathe, baden. ¹² To chatter, plaudern (use the second person plural). ¹³ How, wie. ¹⁴ Spelt, see § 42, note. ¹⁵ That word, dieses Wort. ¹⁶ These two gentlemen, diese zwei Herren. ¹⁷ To marry, heirathen. ¹⁸ Sisters, Schwestern. ¹⁹ How much, wie viel. ²⁰ Weekly, wöchentlich. ²¹ See V. n. 5, 6, and 7, and use the second person singular.

EXERCISE 6.—Who has found my hat¹ and my handkerchief?² You will find your bonnet³ in my bandbox.⁴ This Bavarian⁵ always drinks⁶ beer; we prefer wine.⁷ I shall drink a cup of tea if you have some.⁸ They did not dance,⁹ they jumped (say, sprang). They would do (say, make) their copy¹⁰ if you forced them. This lady¹¹ sang several songs.¹² His sons¹³ have (say, are) sprung over the hedge.¹⁴ This man said¹⁵ he had¹⁶ bound these three volumes.¹⁷ These rivers¹⁸ wind [themselves¹⁹] through beautiful fields,²⁰ and form²¹ several little lakes.²²

¹ My hat (*acc.*) meinen Hut. ² My handkerchief, mein Taschentuch. ³ Your bonnet (*acc.*), Ihren Hut. ⁴ In my bandbox, in meiner Schachtel. ⁵ This Bavarian, dieser Baier. ⁶ Say, drinks always (always, immer). ⁷ We prefer wine, wir ziehen Wein vor. ⁸ Some (*acc. m.*), welchen. ⁹ To dance, tanzen. ¹⁰ Their copy, ihre Abschrift. ¹¹ This lady, diese Dame. ¹² Several songs, mehrere Lieder. ¹³ Seine Söhne. ¹⁴ Over the hedge, über die Hecke. ¹⁵ To say, sagen. ¹⁶ Use the conjunctive. ¹⁷ These three volumes, diese drei Bände. ¹⁸ These rivers, diese Flüsse. ¹⁹ Themselves, sich. ²⁰ Through beautiful fields, durch schöne Felder. ²¹ To form, bilden. ²² Little lakes, kleine Seen.

EXERCISE 7.—Thou speakest with fluency.¹ The master commands his servant.² This glass³ breaks easily.⁴ He recommends himself⁵ to you.⁶ Help him⁷ if you can.⁸ They came two hours⁹ too late. You shall meet him, but do not be frightened. They won our esteem¹⁰ by their integrity.¹¹ He died as a hero.¹² Have the thieves¹³ stolen all¹⁴ his¹⁵ money and his pocket-book?¹⁶ She always spoils my pleasure.¹⁷ How much¹⁸ is this coin¹⁹ worth? You would [to yourself]²⁰ not have taken that liberty²¹ if he had come.

¹ With fluency, mit Geläufigkeit, or geläufig. ² Say, to his servant, seinem Diener. ³ This glass, dieses Glas. ⁴ Easily, leicht. ⁵ Himself, sich. ⁶ To you; Ihnen. ⁷ Say, to him, ihm. ⁸ If you can, wenn Sie können. ⁹ Two hours, zwei Stunden. ¹⁰ Our esteem, unsere Achtung.

¹¹ By their integrity, durch ihre Redlichkeit. ¹² As a hero, wie ein Held. ¹³ The thieves, die Diebe. ¹⁴ All, all. ¹⁵ His, sein. ¹⁶ Pocket-book, Taschenbuch. ¹⁷ Always my pleasure, mit immer das Vergnügen. ¹⁸ How much, wie viel. ¹⁹ This coin, diese Münze. ²⁰ To yourself, sich. ²¹ That liberty (or, freedom), diese Freiheit.

EXERCISE 8.—It was freezing again.¹ The wine is fermenting already.² Have you bent this tree?³ Lift⁴ this stone.⁵ He loses no opportunity.⁶ Have you weighed the parcel? His hand⁷ is swollen. They would have deceived me.⁸ The butter⁹ is melting very fast,¹⁰ and will boil soon.¹¹ Has the girl¹² told a lie? No, she never¹³ tells lies. They have sworn to speak the truth.¹⁴ The servant (*f.*)¹⁵ has not milked the cows¹⁶ yet. The English¹⁷ fought bravely. How many birds¹⁸ has he shot? When¹⁹ shall you remove²⁰ to Berlin?²¹

¹ Again, wieder. ² Already, schon. ³ This tree (*acc.*), diesen Baum. ⁴ Use the second person singular. ⁵ This stone (*acc.*), diesen Stein. ⁶ No opportunity, keine Gelegenheit. ⁷ His hand, seine Hand. ⁸ Me, mich. ⁹ The butter, die Butter. ¹⁰ Very fast, sehr schnell. ¹¹ Soon, bald (say, will soon boil). ¹² The girl, das Mädchen. ¹³ Never, niemals (put 'never' last). ¹⁴ To speak the truth, die Wahrheit zu sagen. ¹⁵ The servant (*f.*), die Magd. ¹⁶ The cows, die Kühe. ¹⁷ The English, die Engländer. ¹⁸ How many birds, wie viele Vögel. ¹⁹ When, wann. ²⁰ To remove, ziehen. ²¹ To Berlin, nach Berlin.

EXERCISE 9.—What books¹ were you reading? We are reading the books [which²] he has given³ us.⁴ He asks you for permission⁵ to read⁶ Walter Scott's works.⁷ We stepped into the shop⁸ and saw beautiful goods.⁹ The queen¹⁰ sat on her throne.¹¹ Step nearer,¹² I do not see you.¹³ Has he forgotten his promise.¹⁴ This poor woman¹⁵ asked me for a piece¹⁶ of bread. She ate it,¹⁷ and thanked me¹⁸ with tears in her (say, the) eyes.¹⁹ The cat²⁰ has eaten the large piece²¹ of meat. I am happy,²² for²³ my mother has (say, is) quite²⁴ recovered. The accident²⁵ would not have (say, be) happened if he had been here.

¹ What books, welche Bücher. ² Which, welche. ³ Say, which he us given has. ⁴ Us, uns. ⁵ For permission, um Erlaubniß. ⁶ To read, zu lesen: say, Walter Scott's works to read. ⁷ Works, Werke. ⁸ Into the shop, in den Laden. ⁹ Beautiful goods, schöne Waaren. ¹⁰ The queen, die Königin. ¹¹ On her throne, auf ihrem Throne. ¹² Nearer, näher. ¹³ Say, I see you (*Sie*) not. ¹⁴ His promise, sein Versprechen. ¹⁵ This poor woman, diese arme Frau. ¹⁶ For a piece, um ein Stück. ¹⁷ It, es. ¹⁸ Thanked me, dankte mir. ¹⁹ With tears in her eyes, mit Thränen in den Augen. ²⁰ The cat, die Katze. ²¹ The large piece, das große Stück. ²² Happy, glücklich. ²³ For (because), denn. ²⁴ Quite, ganz. ²⁵ The accident, das Unglück.

EXERCISE 10.—The boys¹ whistle in the street.² They

whistled the whole evening.³ She turned pale and suffered very much.⁴ Why⁵ have you suffered it? I would not have suffered it if I had been in your place.⁶ She resembles [to] her father.⁷ We rode every morning.⁸ Those girls⁹ always¹⁰ quarrelled;¹¹ none¹² would¹³ yield. The dogs¹⁴ bit several children.¹⁵ Do not stride so fast. Cut a piece of cheese¹⁶ [off¹⁷]. Have you cut your finger.¹⁸ No, I have cut my hand.¹⁹ My father pruned²⁰ his²¹ trees in autumn.²² The trees are already pruned.

¹ The boys, die Knaben. ² In the street, auf der Straße. ³ The whole evening, den ganzen Abend. ⁴ Very much, sehr. ⁵ Why, warum. ⁶ In your place, an Ihrer Stelle. ⁷ To her father, ihrem Vater. ⁸ Every morning, jeden Morgen. ⁹ Those girls, diese Mädchen. ¹⁰ Always, immer (say, quarrelled always). ¹¹ To quarrel, streiten (sich). ¹² None, keines. ¹³ Would (was willing), wollte. ¹⁴ The dogs, die Hunde. ¹⁵ Several children, mehrere Kinder. ¹⁶ Cheese, Käse. ¹⁷ Off, ab. ¹⁸ Your finger, sich in den Finger. ¹⁹ My hand, mich in die Hand. ²⁰ To prune, beschneiden. ²¹ His, seine. ²² In autumn, im Herbst.

EXERCISE 11.—He writes every week¹ to his father.² [The] children³ did not write so often⁴ in my time.⁵ She wrote to me⁶ she would come. I have shunned⁷ his company.⁸ This school⁹ thrives more than that one.¹⁰ We have (say, are) ascended [on] that hill.¹¹ The moon was shining on the sea.¹² That newspaper¹³ seems to me¹⁴ very badly¹⁵ written. How long¹⁶ did you stay¹⁷ at home? ¹⁸ He staid a fortnight¹⁹ in our house.²⁰ I would lend [to] him²¹ this history²² if he remained here. Do not shout; she will awake.²³ The Rhine²⁴ has risen rapidly.²⁵ Before²⁶ we parted, he²⁷ showed [to] me the road.

¹ Every week, jede Woche. ² To his father, an seinen Vater. ³ The children, die Kinder. ⁴ So often, so oft. ⁵ In my time, zu meiner Zeit. ⁶ To me, mir. ⁷ To shun, meiden. ⁸ His company, seine Gesellschaft. ⁹ This school, diese Schule. ¹⁰ More than that one, mehr als jene. ¹¹ On that hill, auf diesen Hügel. ¹² On the sea, auf das Meer. ¹³ That newspaper, diese Zeitung. ¹⁴ To me, mir. ¹⁵ Very badly, sehr schlecht. ¹⁶ How long, wie lange. ¹⁷ To stay, bleiben. ¹⁸ At home, zu Hause. ¹⁹ A fortnight, vierzehn Tage. ²⁰ In our house, bei uns. ²¹ To him, ihm. ²² This history, diese Geschichte. ²³ To awake, aufwachen. ²⁴ The Rhine, der Rhein. ²⁵ Rapidly, schnell. ²⁶ Before (conjunction), bevor. ²⁷ Say, shewed he to me the road.

EXERCISE 12.—They caught many mice¹ in their house.² He was running too fast,³ and he fell. He had (say, was) fallen on his (say, the) head.⁴ Call me if I sleep too long.⁵ Do you advise [to] me to write to Mr S.? ⁶ He sleeps too little;⁷ he must⁸ be⁹ unwell.¹⁰ Why have you pushed him? I would have (say, be) gone to school¹¹ if the servant¹² had called me earlier.¹³ Let us go; we shall return¹⁴ very soon.¹⁵ This leg of mutton¹⁶ is very well¹⁷ roasted. He delivered¹⁸ lectures¹⁹ in

our town.²⁰ Has he delivered any²¹ in Edinburgh? ²² Where²³ will you hang this picture²⁴ and this mirror? ²⁵ In the dining-room.²⁶

¹ Many mice, viele Mäuse. ² In their house, in ihrem Hause. ³ Too fast, zu schnell. ⁴ On his head, auf den Kopf. ⁵ Too long, zu lange. ⁶ To write to Mr S., an Herrn S. zu schreiben. ⁷ Too little, zu wenig. ⁸ He must, er muß. ⁹ Say, unwell be. ¹⁰ Unwell, unwohl. ¹¹ To school, in die Schule. ¹² The servant (male), der Diener. ¹³ Earlier, früher. ¹⁴ To return, zurück kommen. ¹⁵ Very soon, sehr bald. ¹⁶ This leg of mutton, diese Hammelfeule. ¹⁷ Very well, sehr gut. ¹⁸ To deliver, halten. ¹⁹ Lectures, Vorlesungen. ²⁰ In our town, in unserer Stadt. ²¹ Any, welche. ²² Edinburgh, Edinburg. ²³ Where, wohin. ²⁴ This picture, dieses Bild. ²⁵ This mirror (*acc.*), diesen Spiegel. ²⁶ In the dining-room, in den Speisesaal (or in das Esszimmer, or Speisezimmer).

EXERCISE 13.—That tree¹ grows on the side of rivers.² It³ bears beautiful blossom.⁴ Has the baker⁵ baked the bread?⁶ I shall bake a cake⁷ if you⁸ are good.⁹ [The] apple-trees¹⁰ in that country¹¹ grow very slowly.¹² The name¹³ of that old family¹⁴ stands above the door.¹⁵ He was standing before me¹⁶ and struck the poor boy.¹⁷ God¹⁸ has created [the] heaven¹⁹ and [the] earth.²⁰ We ride,²¹ but we would drive if the roads²² were better.²³ That woman²⁴ washed your handkerchiefs,²⁵ and carried them²⁶ to your house.²⁷ Had it struck four²⁸ when²⁹ you saw them?³⁰

¹ That tree, dieser Baum. ² On the side of rivers, an Flüssen. ³ It (*m.*), er. ⁴ Beautiful blossom, schöne Blüten. ⁵ The baker, der Bäcker. ⁶ The bread, das Brod. ⁷ A cake (*acc.*), einen Kuchen. ⁸ Use ihr (*2d pers. pl.*). ⁹ Good, artig. ¹⁰ The apple-trees, die Apfelbäume. ¹¹ In that country, in diesem Lande. ¹² Very slowly, sehr langsam. ¹³ The name, der Name. ¹⁴ Of that old family, dieser alten Familie. ¹⁵ Above the door, über der Thüre. ¹⁶ Before me, vor mir. ¹⁷ The poor boy (*acc.*), den armen Knaben. ¹⁸ God, Gott. ¹⁹ The heaven (*acc.*), den Himmel. ²⁰ The earth, die Erde. ²¹ To ride, reiten. ²² The roads, die Wege. ²³ Better, besser. ²⁴ That woman, diese Frau. ²⁵ Your handkerchiefs, Ihre Taschentücher. ²⁶ Them, sie. ²⁷ To your house, nach Ihrem Hause. ²⁸ Four, vier. ²⁹ When, als. ³⁰ Say, when you them saw (*to see*, § 51).

EXERCISE 14.—What do you think of it?¹ He knows the names² of all flowers³ which⁴ I have brought.⁵ Bring some dry wood;⁶ this⁷ does not burn. I have known that physician.⁸ He was very celebrated;⁹ everybody knew him and named him the father of the poor.¹⁰ The light¹¹ was burning on my table¹² when I arrived.¹³ Who¹⁴ knows if¹⁵ he will escape?¹⁶ Do you know why he comes? He did it out of esteem¹⁷ for you.¹⁸ He sent that letter three weeks ago.¹⁹ If I did²⁰ it, would you punish²¹ me? I would name them²² by their Christian names.²³

¹ Of it, davon. ² The names, die Namen. ³ Of all flowers, aller

Blumen. ⁴ Which, welche. ⁵ Say, which I brought have. ⁶ Some dry wood, trockenes Holz. ⁷ This, dieses. ⁸ That physician (*acc.*), diesen Arzt. ⁹ Celebrated, berühmt. ¹⁰ Of the poor, der Armen. ¹¹ The light, das Licht. ¹² On my table, auf meinem Tische. ¹³ When I arrived, als ich ankam. ¹⁴ Who, wer. ¹⁵ If (*interrog.*), ob. ¹⁶ To escape, entkommen. ¹⁷ Out of esteem, aus Achtung. ¹⁸ For you, für Sie. ¹⁹ Three weeks ago, vor drei Wochen. ²⁰ Use the present conditional. ²¹ To punish, bestrafen. ²² Them, sie. ²³ By their Christian names, bei ihren Vornamen.

✕ EXERCISE 15.—We dare not admit¹ him; he would make² everybody laugh.³ Could you easily translate⁴ your history? She dares eat no strawberries;⁵ the doctor⁶ does not allow⁷ it. Can you tell [to] me in what street⁸ he lives.⁹ Sophia¹⁰ would shew it to us¹¹ if she could find it again.¹² Thou art to¹³ learn two pages¹⁴ in thy spelling-book,¹⁵ and thy brother three.¹⁶ He was bound¹⁷ to find his mistake.¹⁸ I have wanted¹⁹ to visit him, but I have never been able to find time. We should like²⁰ to take the stage-coach;²¹ we would travel slower.²² \

¹ To admit, zulassen. ² To make (to cause), machen (to be put last). ³ To laugh, lachen. ⁴ To translate, übersetzen. ⁵ Strawberries, Erdbeeren. ⁶ The doctor, der Arzt. ⁷ To allow, erlauben. ⁸ In what street, in welcher Straße. ⁹ To live, wohnen. ¹⁰ Sophia, Sophie. ¹¹ To us, uns. ¹² To find again, wiederfinden. ¹³ Use sollen. ¹⁴ Two pages, zwei Seiten. ¹⁵ In thy spelling-book, aus deiner Bibel. ¹⁶ Three, drei. ¹⁷ Use müssen. ¹⁸ His mistake (*acc.*), seinen Irrthum. ¹⁹ Use wollen. ²⁰ Use the conditional of mögen. ²¹ The stage-coach (*acc.*), den Giltwagen. ²² Slower, langsamer.

EXERCISE 16.—That book is (being) much¹ read. It will soon be translated² into German.³ Two lighthouses⁴ have been built⁵ last year.⁶ That large estate⁷ was bought by the queen.⁸ Such dresses⁹ are [being] very much worn¹⁰ now. The Heidelberg castle¹¹ is [being] visited every year by thousands.¹² The five pounds¹³ which had been lost, have been found by my friend Edward.¹⁴ Mount Etna¹⁵ has been ascended¹⁶ three times¹⁷ by that gentleman.¹⁸ He spoke so loud¹⁹ that he could be heard by everybody. They would have been beaten²⁰ by the enemy, if the Prussian troops²¹ had (say, were) not arrived.²²

¹ Much, viel. ² To translate, übersetzen. ³ Into German, ins Deutsche. ⁴ Two lighthouses, zwei Leuchttürme. ⁵ To build, bauen. ⁶ Last year, voriges Jahr. ⁷ That large estate, dieses große Landgut. ⁸ By the queen, von der Königin. ⁹ Such dresses, solche Kleider. ¹⁰ To wear, tragen. ¹¹ The Heidelberg castle, das Heidelberger Schloss. ¹² By thousands, von Tausenden. ¹³ The five pounds, die fünf Pfund. ¹⁴ By my friend Edward, von meinem Freunde Eduard. ¹⁵ Mount Etna, der Etna. ¹⁶ To ascend, besteigen. ¹⁷ Three times, dreimal. ¹⁸ By that gentleman, von diesem Herrn. ¹⁹ So loud, so laut. ²⁰ To beat, schlagen. ²¹ The Prussian troops, die preussischen Truppen. ²² Arrived (*participle*), angelangt.

EXERCISE 17.—He will deceive¹ you before² you notice³ it. They have probably⁴ misunderstood⁵ your friend. Why do you always sell your houses? Command;⁶ I will obey⁷ [to] you. Who [has] discovered America?⁸ You discovered your mistake⁹ too late. Do not contradict¹⁰ [to] me; I will not suffer¹¹ it. Would he have divided¹² that sum of money¹³ if he had been able¹⁴ to do otherwise?¹⁵ That young lady¹⁶ has abused my patience¹⁷ and disregarded my advice. He could¹⁸ not do it without¹⁹ abusing your kindness.

¹ To deceive, betrügen. ² Before (*conjunction*), bevor. ³ To notice, bemerken. ⁴ Probably, wahrscheinlich. ⁵ To misunderstand, missverstehen. ⁶ To command, befehlen (use the second person plural). ⁷ To obey, gehorchen. ⁸ America, Amerika. ⁹ Your mistake (*acc.*), Ihren Irrthum. ¹⁰ To contradict, widersprechen. ¹¹ To suffer, leiden. ¹² To divide, theilen. ¹³ That sum of money, diese Geldsumme. ¹⁴ See note, p. 48. ¹⁵ Otherwise, anders. ¹⁶ That young lady, dieses Fräulein. ¹⁷ My patience, meine Geduld. ¹⁸ Use the conditional. ¹⁹ Without abusing; say, without your kindness to abuse (without...to, ohne...zu).

EXERCISE 18.—Why do you shut the windows?¹ Open them.² Begin your letter.³ We shall set out to-morrow.⁴ He arrived at nine o'clock.⁵ Come in⁶ and take off your boots.⁷ Put on⁸ your slippers.⁹ Go out and shut the garden door.¹⁰ How much¹¹ does his cousin¹² William spend? You sleep¹³ too long;¹⁴ get up. We dine¹⁵ earlier¹⁶ than¹⁷ you. Had she given up¹⁸ her intention.¹⁹ I translate every day²⁰ two pages.²¹ The post-horse²² has (say, is) run away yesterday.²³ Listen to²⁴ his lectures.²⁵ I ferry him over every morning.²⁶

¹ The windows, die Fenster. ² Them, sie. ³ Your letter (*acc.*), Ihren Brief. ⁴ To-morrow, morgen. ⁵ At nine o'clock, um neun Uhr. ⁶ To come in, hereinkommen. ⁷ Your boots, Ihre Stiefel. ⁸ To put on, anziehen. ⁹ Your slippers, Ihre Pantoffeln. ¹⁰ The garden door, die Gartenthüre. ¹¹ How much, wie viel. ¹² His cousin, sein Vetter. ¹³ To sleep, schlafen. ¹⁴ Too long, zu lange. ¹⁵ To dine, zu mittag Essen. ¹⁶ Earlier, früher. ¹⁷ Than, als. ¹⁸ To give up, aufgeben. ¹⁹ Her intention, ihre Absicht. ²⁰ Every day (*acc. of time*), jeden Tag. ²¹ Two pages, zwei Seiten. ²² The post-horse, das Postpferd. ²³ Yesterday, gestern. ²⁴ To listen to, anhören. ²⁵ His lectures, seine Vorträge. ²⁶ Every morning (*acc.*), jeden Morgen.

EXERCISE 19.—The days are becoming¹ shorter.² I remained³ three nights in⁴ the town. My mother's sisters are all⁵ dead.⁶ Here are fine⁷ cows and oxen. These forests belong⁸ to the prince.⁹ Look for¹⁰ thy reading-book; is it not on¹¹ the table? How many¹² rooms have you in your house¹³? We have ten¹⁴ rooms. These pictures are too dear;¹⁵ do not buy them.¹⁶ My brothers-in-law have taught¹⁷ the count's sons. They say that these towns have¹⁸ been taken by¹⁹ the enemy.

Have you many flowers in your garden? ²⁰ I shall receive from ²¹ my mother a dozen ²² pocket-handkerchiefs and *some* pretty ²³ ribbons. Where does he keep ²⁴ his dogs?

¹ To become, werden. ² Shorter, kürzer. ³ To remain, bleiben. ⁴ In, in, with the dative. ⁵ All (*nom. plur.*), alle. ⁶ Dead, todt. ⁷ Fine (*nom. plur.*), schön. ⁸ To belong, gehören. ⁹ Use fürst. ¹⁰ To look for, suchen. ¹¹ On, auf (with the dative). ¹² How many, wie viele. ¹³ Use the dative. ¹⁴ Ten, zehn. ¹⁵ Too dear, zu theuer. ¹⁶ Them, sie. ¹⁷ Taught, unterrichtet. ¹⁸ Use the conjunctive. ¹⁹ By, von (with the dative). ²⁰ Use the dative. ²¹ From, von (with the dative). ²² A dozen, ein Duzend. ²³ Pretty (*acc. plur.*), hübsche. ²⁴ To keep, halten.

EXERCISE 20.—These women were quite¹ moved.² Do you find the fruit³ as good as⁴ last year?⁵ The weather was splendid;⁶ the birds sang⁷ in the forests.⁸ The streets were full⁹ of people.¹⁰ The sign-boards of these shops are beautifully¹¹ painted. Order¹² a goose and two hares. Do you know¹³ these Prussians and Danes? The prince's¹⁴ palace has been built two years ago.¹⁵ These gentlemen had danced with¹⁶ your sisters. This news¹⁷ was false.¹⁸ This newspaper gives very seldom¹⁹ authentic news.²⁰ You should²¹ thank [to] that gentleman. Has (say, is) he gone into the house²² or into the garden?²³ What²⁴ peoples inhabit²⁴ those countries?

¹ Quite, ganz. ² Moved, gerührt. ³ The fruit, das Obst. ⁴ As good as, so gut wie. ⁵ Last year, voriges Jahr. ⁶ Splendid, prachtvoll. ⁷ To sing, singen. ⁸ Use the dative. ⁹ Full, voll. ¹⁰ Of people, von Leuten. ¹¹ Beautifully, schön. ¹² To order, bestellen. ¹³ To know, kennen. ¹⁴ Use Prinz. ¹⁵ Two years ago, vor zwei Jahren. ¹⁶ With, mit (with the dative). ¹⁷ This news, diese Nachricht. ¹⁸ False, falsch. ¹⁹ Seldom, selten. ²⁰ Authentic news, wahre Nachrichten. ²¹ Use sollen. ²² Use the accusative. ²³ What (*nom. plur.*), welche. ²⁴ To inhabit, bewohnen.

EXERCISE 21.—The banks will be open¹ to-morrow,² for³ it is no holiday. Those trades-people had shops in⁴ several⁵ towns. I admire that thought; it⁶ shows⁷ the kindness of his⁸ heart. We have seen that lady; do you know⁹ her¹⁰ name? Write this word in large letters.¹¹ From¹² which¹³ gardener has he bought these laurels? Bring him his slippers; you will find them¹⁴ under¹⁵ the bed. He spoke those words with much difficulty,¹⁶ and died. How many words shall¹⁷ we learn? Have you shut the shutters? They sat on the garden-seats¹⁸ and enjoyed¹⁹ the calm²⁰ of the evening.

¹ Open, offen. ² To-morrow, morgen (say, to-morrow open). ³ For (*conjunction*), denn. ⁴ Use the dative. ⁵ Several (*dative*), mehreren. ⁶ It (*m.*), er. ⁷ To show, zeigen. ⁸ His, sein (use the genitive). ⁹ To know, wissen. ¹⁰ Her, ihr (use the accusative). ¹¹ Use the dative. ¹² From, von (with the dative). ¹³ Which, welcher (use the dative). ¹⁴ Them, sie. ¹⁵ Under, unter (with the dative). ¹⁶ With much difficulty,

mit großer Mühe. ¹⁷ Use, sollen. ¹⁸ The garden seat, die Gartenbank.
¹⁹ To enjoy, genießen. ²⁰ The calm, die Stille.

EXERCISE 22.—Rome¹ has had kings, consuls, and emperors.² [The] diamonds and rubies are precious stones.³ The students like⁴ their⁵ professors. Almost all⁶ professors of the university are very celebrated.⁷ He wrote that book on⁸ the gospels shortly⁹ after¹⁰ his appointment¹¹ as¹² bishop. How many consonants does the word Paris contain?¹³ Three. This history of the popes is very well¹⁴ written, and remains¹⁵ the best¹⁶ [that]¹⁷ we have. Do you not admire the beauty,¹⁸ the sublimity¹⁹ of this psalm? Hannibal²⁰ used²¹ numerous²² elephants in²³ the war²⁴ against²⁵ the Romans.²⁶

¹ Rome, Rom. ² The emperor, der Kaiser. ³ The precious stone, der Edelstein. ⁴ To like, gern haben (put gern at the end of the sentence). ⁵ Their (pl.), ihre. ⁶ All (nom. pl.), alle. ⁷ Celebrated, berühmte. ⁸ On, über, with the accusative. ⁹ Shortly, kurz. ¹⁰ After, nach (with the dative). ¹¹ The appointment, die Anstellung. ¹² As, als. ¹³ To contain, enthalten. ¹⁴ Very well, sehr gut. ¹⁵ Remains, ist noch immer. ¹⁶ The best (fem.), die beste. ¹⁷ That (fem.), welche. ¹⁸ The beauty, die Schönheit. ¹⁹ The sublimity, die Erhabenheit. ²⁰ Hannibal, Hannibal. ²¹ To use, gebrauchen. ²² Numerous (acc. pl.), zahlreiche. ²³ Use the dative. ²⁴ The war, der Krieg. ²⁵ Against, gegen (with the accusative). ²⁶ The Roman, der Römer.

EXERCISE 23.—London is situated¹ on² the Thames.³ Frankfort-on-the-Main⁴ is richer than⁵ Frankfort-on-the-Oder.⁶ The lakes⁷ of [the] Switzerland are charming. Have you known Mary's⁸ father? The Alps⁹ are the highest¹⁰ mountains of Europe.¹¹ The population of Metz¹² consists of¹³ French¹⁴ and Germans.¹⁵ Frederick's and Elizabeth's parents shall arrive¹⁶ the day after to-morrow.¹⁷ Is English¹⁸ [being] spoken in all parts¹⁹ of America? We have translated the epistles of Cicero and the history of [the] Tacitus.²⁰ He has got²¹ better²² news²³ from²⁴ his friend Charles.

¹ To be situated, liegen. ² On, an, with the dative. ³ The Thames, die Themse. ⁴ Frankfort-on-the-Main, Frankfurt am Main. ⁵ Richer than, reicher als. ⁶ On-the-Oder, an der Oder. ⁷ The lake, der See. ⁸ Mary, Marie. ⁹ The Alps, die Alpen. ¹⁰ The highest (pl.), die höchsten. ¹¹ Europe, Europa. ¹² Metz, Metz. ¹³ To consist of, bestehen aus (with the dative). ¹⁴ The Frenchman, der Franzose. ¹⁵ The German, der Deutsche. ¹⁶ To arrive, ankommen. ¹⁷ The day after to-morrow, übermorgen. ¹⁸ English, das Englische. ¹⁹ The part, der Theil. ²⁰ Tacitus, Tacitus. ²¹ To get, bekommen. ²² Better (acc. pl.), bessere. ²³ News, use the plural of (die) Nachricht. ²⁴ From, von, with the dative.

EXERCISE 24.—Good milk¹ (nom.). Bad² milk (acc.). Of the good milk. To the bad milk. Large lions.³ Of fine lions

The fine lions. Of clean ⁴ water.⁵ The kindness of the celebrated ⁶ Franklin.⁷ We have had a beautiful evening.⁸ They will occupy ⁹ the best ¹⁰ places.¹¹ Does her youngest ¹² son go to ¹³ Paris? In spite ¹⁴ of his long illness,¹⁵ he has ¹⁶ been able ¹⁷ to finish ¹⁸ his work.¹⁹ The first rules ²⁰ are very easy.²¹ Old wines are always dear.²² Have you seen the large casks in ²³ the castle? He has paid ²⁴ [to] me a long visit.²⁵ The dog followed ²⁶ [to] these poor women. Has he brought ²⁷ my new ²⁸ shoes? ²⁹

¹ The milk, die Milch. ² Bad, schlecht. ³ The lion, der Löwe. ⁴ Clean, rein. ⁵ The water, das Wasser. ⁶ Celebrated, berühmt. ⁷ Franklin, Franklin. ⁸ The evening, der Abend. ⁹ To occupy, besetzen. ¹⁰ Best, beste. ¹¹ The place, der Platz. ¹² Youngest, jüngste. ¹³ To, nach. ¹⁴ In spite, trotz (with the genitive). ¹⁵ The illness, die Krankheit. ¹⁶ Say, has he. ¹⁷ To be able, können (see note, p. 48). ¹⁸ To finish, beenden. ¹⁹ The work, die Arbeit. ²⁰ The rule, die Regel. ²¹ Easy, leicht. ²² Dear, theuer. ²³ Use the dative. ²⁴ To pay (a visit), machen. ²⁵ The visit, der Besuch. ²⁶ To follow, folgen. ²⁷ To bring, bringen. ²⁸ New, neu. ²⁹ The shoe, der Schuh.

X EXERCISE 25.—Have the judges¹ granted² [to] him the bequeathed³ sums? Repeated⁴ misfortunes⁵ have destroyed⁶ all his hopes.⁷ The mother of the rescued (saved)⁸ sailor⁹ has (say, is) arrived yesterday. The acquitted¹⁰ prefect¹¹ and his sons shall set out¹² for¹³ Paris. The lost things (objects)¹⁴ have been found in¹⁵ an adjoining room. We are to¹⁶ help¹⁷ [to] the poor¹⁸ and visit¹⁹ the sick. Almost everybody follows²⁰ now [to] the Paris or London fashions. The impending²¹ war²² will certainly²³ last²⁴ long. The Frankfort fair has lost very much of²⁵ its²⁶ importance.²⁷ Do you like²⁸ Vienna beer?

¹ The judge, der Richter. ² To grant, bewilligen. ³ To bequeath, vermachen. ⁴ Repeated, wiederholt. ⁵ Misfortunes, Unglücksfälle. ⁶ To destroy, zerstören. ⁷ The hope, die Hoffnung. ⁸ To save, retten. ⁹ The sailor, der Matrose. ¹⁰ Acquitted, freigesprochen. ¹¹ The prefect, der Präfect. ¹² To set out, abreisen. ¹³ For, nach. ¹⁴ The object, der Gegenstand. ¹⁵ Use the dative. ¹⁶ We are to, use sollen. ¹⁷ To help, helfen. ¹⁸ Use the plural. ¹⁹ To visit, besuchen. ²⁰ Follows, richtet sich nach (with the dative). ²¹ Impending, bevorstehend. ²² The war, der Krieg. ²³ Certainly, sicher. ²⁴ To last, dauern. ²⁵ Of, von (with the dative). ²⁶ Its (*fem.*), ihre. ²⁷ The importance, die Wichtigkeit. ²⁸ To like, gern trinken.

EXERCISE 26.—This gentleman is not so eminent¹ as his sister. Are you as old as your friend Mr M.? I have shot² to-day a larger stag³ than last week. [The] iron⁴ is the most useful⁵ metal,⁶ much⁷ more useful than [the] lead.⁸ This rose⁹ is the finest in¹⁰ the whole¹¹ garden. His oldest child could¹²

be¹³ five years¹⁴ old, the youngest no more than two.¹⁵ Frederick is more clever¹⁶ than wise.¹⁷ I hope¹⁸ you will find a better room¹⁹ in²⁰ our street.²¹ This letter is extremely important.²² I have got²³ fewer invitations²⁴ than usual.²⁵

¹ Eminent, ausgezeichnet. ² To shoot, schießen. ³ The stag, der Hirsch. ⁴ The iron, das Eisen. ⁵ Useful, nützlich. ⁶ The metal, das Metall. ⁷ Much, viel. ⁸ The lead, das Blei. ⁹ The rose, die Rose. ¹⁰ Use the dative. ¹¹ Whole, ganz. ¹² Use mögen. ¹³ Put *be* after *old*. ¹⁴ Five years, fünf Jahre. ¹⁵ Two, zwei. ¹⁶ Clever, klug. ¹⁷ Wise, weise. ¹⁸ To hope, hoffen. ¹⁹ The room, das Zimmer. ²⁰ Use the dative. ²¹ Our street, unsere Straße. ²² Important, wichtig. ²³ To get, bekommen. ²⁴ The invitation, die Einladung. ²⁵ Usual, gewöhnlich.

EXERCISE 27.—He wounded¹ me and her. I use² that book ; do you use it also?³ Give me the seal.⁴ I do not know⁵ where it is. We shall not forsake⁶ him. Has his uncle helped⁷ [to] you? We thanked [to] them for⁸ the sealing-wax.⁹ I shall always think (remember)¹⁰ of him. Can¹¹ she tell [to] me where he is sitting?¹² No, but, I can tell [it to] you, miss. Have they spoken¹³ of it (say, thereof)? We have often worked¹⁴ for him; he always gave us more than our wages.¹⁵ You shall think¹⁶ of it,¹⁷ but it will be too late.¹⁸ Were you satisfied with it (say, therewith)?

¹ To wound, verwunden. ² To use, gebrauchen. ³ Also, auch. ⁴ The seal, das Pstschäft. ⁵ To know, wissen. ⁶ To forsake, verlassen. ⁷ To help, helfen. ⁸ For, für (with the accusative). ⁹ The sealing-wax, das Siegellack. ¹⁰ To remember, getenken. ¹¹ Use können. ¹² To be sitting, sitzen. ¹³ To speak, sprechen. ¹⁴ To work, arbeiten. ¹⁵ Our wages, unser Lohn. ¹⁶ To think, denken. ¹⁷ Of it (with denken), daran. ¹⁸ Too late, zu spät.

EXERCISE 28.—They conduct¹ themselves very badly.² Does she conduct herself better?³ Conduct thyself well.⁴ I applied⁵ myself to learn⁶ it. You have improved⁷ [yourself] very much.⁸ I have recollected⁹ [myself to] it.¹⁰ Recollect [yourselves to] it. We can rely¹¹ [ourselves] upon it.¹² Do not accustom yourself to it.¹³ They will betray¹⁴ one another. We avoid¹⁵ one another. These gentlemen¹⁶ have changed¹⁷ [themselves] lately¹⁸ very much.⁸ They say¹⁹ he has²⁰ done²¹ it himself. Even his sons would have forsaken him. Will they sit beside each other? We meet²² one another every morning.²³ Have they spoken²⁴ against²⁵ each other?

¹ To conduct one's self, sich betragen. ² Badly, schlecht. ³ Better, besser. ⁴ Well, gut. ⁵ To apply one's self, sich befeissen. ⁶ To learn, zu lernen. ⁷ To improve, sich bessern. ⁸ Very much, sehr. ⁹ To recollect, sich erinnern. ¹⁰ To it, daran (or dessen, of it). ¹¹ To rely, sich verlassen. ¹² Upon it, darauf. ¹³ To it, daran. ¹⁴ To betray, verrathen. ¹⁵ To avoid, meiden. ¹⁶ The gentleman, der Herr. ¹⁷ To change, sich ändern. ¹⁸ Lately, in der letzten Zeit. ¹⁹ They say, man sagt. ²⁰ Use the conjunctive. ²¹ To do,

thun. ²³ To meet, treffen. ²⁴ Every morning, jeden Morgen. ²⁵ To speak, sprechen. ²⁶ Against, gegen.

EXERCISE 29.—My grandfather¹ has fine flowers in his garden.² This tree has lost all³ its leaves.⁴ Lend [to] me thy pencil;⁵ I have forgotten mine. We have let our house, and you have sold yours. Every age⁶ has its joys⁷ and its sorrows.⁸ What⁹ you see here (say, here see) is mine, and you have no right to take¹⁰ it (say, it to take). Your grapes¹¹ are not as ripe¹² as ours. At what time¹³ does she expect¹⁴ her guests?¹⁵ At about eight o'clock.¹⁶

¹ Grandfather, Großvater. ² Use the dative. ³ All, alle. ⁴ The leaf, das Blatt. ⁵ The pencil, der Bleistift. ⁶ Every age, jedes Alter. ⁷ The joy, die Freude. ⁸ Sorrows, Leiden. ⁹ What, was. ¹⁰ To take, zu nehmen. ¹¹ Grapes, Weintrauben. ¹² Ripe, reif. ¹³ At what time, um wieviel Uhr. ¹⁴ To expect, erwarten. ¹⁵ The guest, der Gast. ¹⁶ About eight o'clock, gegen acht Uhr.

EXERCISE 30.—This one has been (say, has had) wrong.¹ We praise² this girl, and blame³ that. I prefer⁴ this flower to that. Does she understand⁵ that? Can you sing these songs?⁶ Who live⁷ in those houses?⁸ This poplar⁹ is less high than those [which] we have just¹⁰ seen. His mother has given¹¹ [to] him this beautiful ring.¹² I shall write it to you if I recollect it.¹³ He (say, that one) who works¹⁴ learns,¹⁵ and is [being] praised. These are important¹⁶ privileges.¹⁷ Has he reminded¹⁸ you of your promise?¹⁹ No, he has not reminded me of it. I thank [to you] for it (say, therefor).

¹ Wrong, Unrecht. ² To praise, loben. ³ To blame, tadeln. ⁴ To prefer, vorziehen (see p. 82, § 96). ⁵ To understand, verstehen. ⁶ The song, das Lied. ⁷ To live, wohnen. ⁸ Use the dative. ⁹ The poplar, die Pappel. ¹⁰ Just, eben. ¹¹ To give, schenken. ¹² The ring, der Ring. ¹³ Use the genitive. ¹⁴ To work, arbeiten. ¹⁵ To learn, lernen. ¹⁶ Important, wichtig. ¹⁷ The privilege, das Vorrecht. ¹⁸ To remind of, erinnern an, with the accusative. ¹⁹ The promise, das Versprechen.

EXERCISE 31.—Who says so?¹ Who was knocking? To whom does this house belong?² (say, belongs this house?) Whom did they strike?³ (say, have they struck?) Whose fault⁴ is it? Whom does she call?⁵ Whose dagger⁶ was it? What kind of wine do you like best?⁷ What kind of book do you read now? Which promise⁸ has ever⁹ been more solemn?¹⁰ What is more beautiful than to die¹¹ for¹² the freedom¹³ of one's country?¹⁴ Of¹⁵ which orator¹⁶ were you speaking? In what (say, whereat, woran) do you find anything¹⁷ to praise?¹⁸ I can tell you easily¹⁹ what (say, whereat) you are thinking²⁰ of. Go and tell him what I mean.

¹ So, es (it). ² To belong, gehören. ³ To strike, schlagen. ⁴ Fault, Fehler. ⁵ To call, rufen. ⁶ Dagger, Dolch. ⁷ I like best, ich binke am

ließten. ⁸ The promise, das Versprechen. ⁹ Ever, jemals. ¹⁰ Solemn, feierlich.
¹¹ To die, zu sterben (put it at the end of sentence). ¹² For, für, with the
 accusative. ¹³ The freedom, die Freiheit. ¹⁴ One's country, sein Vaterland.
¹⁵ Of, von, with the dative. ¹⁶ The orator, der Redner. ¹⁷ Anything,
 etwas. ¹⁸ To praise, loben. ¹⁹ Easily, leicht. ²⁰ To think, denken.

EXERCISE 32.—The barns which you see in this street¹ belonged² to this peasant. He who works diligently³ learns a great deal.⁴ He who is modest is liked⁵ by everybody.⁶ Tell us what she has done. The children whose tutor⁷ I knew are now in Geneva; they are learning French there.⁸ I lost the parcel⁹ in which¹⁰ I had put¹¹ my blue ribbons. The apricots which you have bought are not ripe yet. The gentleman from¹² whom you got¹³ these presents has died.¹⁴ The mother whose children are good¹⁵ is always happy. What you have ordered¹⁶ has not arrived yet. The merchants of¹⁷ whose kindness you often speak are the count's¹⁸ nephews.¹⁹

¹ In this street, in dieser Straße. ² To belong, gehören. ³ Diligently, fleißig. ⁴ A great deal, sehr viel. ⁵ Passive of lieben, to love, to like. ⁶ By everybody, von Jedermann. ⁷ Tutor, Hauslehrer. ⁸ There, dort (to be placed before French). ⁹ The parcel, das Paket. ¹⁰ In which, in welchem. ¹¹ To put, thun. ¹² From, von, governing the dative. ¹³ To get, bekommen. ¹⁴ To die, sterben (say, is dead). ¹⁵ Good (well-behaved), artig. ¹⁶ To order, bestellen. ¹⁷ Of, von. ¹⁸ The count, der Graf. ¹⁹ The nephew, der Neffe.

EXERCISE 33.—Everybody observed¹ it with great interest. He receives² everybody with kindness.³ He related⁴ to everybody that he had composed⁵ a beautiful song,⁶ but nobody believed⁷ it. I know⁸ nobody in⁹ the whole¹⁰ town. One must apply one's self¹¹ if one wishes¹² to learn. We must give him something before¹³ he goes. If you see anybody, inform¹⁴ me immediately.¹⁵ She is very dangerously¹⁶ ill; they despair (say, one despairs)¹⁷ of her recovery.¹⁸ Eat something yet; you have a long¹⁹ way²⁰ before you.²¹ One must do²² one's duty²³ on²⁴ every occasion.²⁵ One thinks of²⁶ one's self more than of one's neighbour.

¹ To observe, beobachten. ² To receive, empfangen. ³ Kindness, Güte. ⁴ To relate, erzählen. ⁵ To compose, componiren. ⁶ The song, das Lied. ⁷ To believe, glauben. ⁸ To know, kennen. ⁹ in, with the dative. ¹⁰ Whole, ganz. ¹¹ To apply one's self, sich befeßigen. ¹² To wish, wollen. ¹³ Before, ehe. ¹⁴ To inform, benachrichtigen. ¹⁵ Immediately, sogleich. ¹⁶ Dangerously, gefährlich. ¹⁷ To despair of, verzweifeln an, with the dative. ¹⁸ The recovery, die Genesung. ¹⁹ Long, weit. ²⁰ The road, der Weg. ²¹ Before you, vor sich. ²² To do, thun. ²³ The duty, die Pflicht. ²⁴ On, bei, with the dative. ²⁵ The occasion, die Gelegenheit. ²⁶ To think of, denken an, with the accusative.

EXERCISE 34.—2. 7. 11. 23. 34. 41. 55. 68. 77. 83. 99. 107. 138. 185. 201. 555. 1883. 4749. 50,711. 5,277,910. How many¹ mistakes² have you made? Five, and Henry³ has only⁴ made one. Our town has over⁵ 250,000 inhabitants.⁶ We must read⁷ quicker; ⁸ we have still⁹ twenty pages to¹⁰ read. Send [to] me ten pounds *of* coffee, five pounds *of* flour,¹¹ and one pound *of* salt.¹² They cannot do it; ¹³ they have tried¹⁴ three times in vain.¹⁵ My room¹⁶ is fifteen feet long and thirteen broad. We sell only three kinds of beer.¹⁷ Come at¹⁸ eleven o'clock; ¹⁹ I will be at home.²⁰

¹ How many, wie viele. ² The mistake, der Fehler. ³ Henry, Heinrich. ⁴ Only, nur. ⁵ Over, über. ⁶ The inhabitant, der Einwohner. ⁷ To read, lesen. ⁸ Quick, schnell. ⁹ Still, noch. ¹⁰ To, zu. ¹¹ Flour, Mehl. ¹² Salt, Salz. ¹³ I cannot do it, ich kann es nicht thun. ¹⁴ To try, versuchen. ¹⁵ In vain, vergebens. ¹⁶ The room, das Zimmer. ¹⁷ Beer, Bier. ¹⁸ At, um. ¹⁹ O'clock, Uhr. ²⁰ At home, zu Hause.

EXERCISE 35.—Napoleon¹ the First was born in the year 1769, and died on the fifth of May² 1821. Where is that street? It is the third to the left.³ Who is the first of the class⁴ to-day? Charles; he is for the⁵ third time [the] first. We shall not be done⁶ before⁷ an hour and a half (say, hours); do not wait for⁸ us. The banks⁹ shut¹⁰ at half-past three; you have then still¹¹ half an hour. Two-thirds of the candidates,¹² that is¹³ 45, have passed¹⁴ the last examination.¹⁵ We shall buy a pound *of* cherries and half a dozen *of* oranges.¹⁶ Their swords¹⁷ were three and a half feet long. That old lead¹⁸ weighs¹⁹ over²⁰ three-quarters *of* a hundredweight. He came every day²¹ at five minutes past one.

¹ Napoleon, Napoleon. ² May, Mai. ³ To the left, nach links. ⁴ The class, die Klasse. ⁵ Say, to the, zum (= zu dem). ⁶ To be done, fertig sein. ⁷ Before, vor, with the dative. ⁸ For, auf, with the accusative. ⁹ The banks, see § 88. ¹⁰ To shut, schließen. ¹¹ Still, noch. ¹² Of the candidates, der Kandidaten. ¹³ That is, or namely, nämlich. ¹⁴ To pass, bestehen. ¹⁵ The examination, die Prüfung. ¹⁶ The orange, die Apfelsine. ¹⁷ The sword, das Schwert. ¹⁸ [The] lead, das Blei. ¹⁹ To weigh, wiegen. ²⁰ Over, über. ²¹ Every day (acc. of time), jeden Tag.

EXERCISE 36.—We have no opportunity¹ to see him.² They had really³ no luck.⁴ You could render⁵ [to] him no greater service. This book has no title-page;⁶ have you torn it out?⁷ Every village in the neighbourhood⁸ of this town has suffered⁹ very much. In all Edinburgh I know (say, know I) no better man. Do everything in its proper time.¹⁰ We have printed¹¹ many a book about¹² art¹³ and science.¹⁴ Many a one recollects yet [of] the first speeches¹⁵ of these statesmen.¹⁶ Has she not too little patience¹⁷ with¹⁸ her children? He wrote many a comedy,¹⁹ but none was accepted²⁰ by the directors²¹ of this theatre.

¹The opportunity, die Gelegenheit. ²To see him, ihn zu sehen. ³Really, wirklich. ⁴The luck, das Glück. ⁵To render a service, einen Dienst erweisen. ⁶The title-page, das Titelblatt. ⁷To tear out, herausreißen. ⁸The neighbourhood, die Umgegend (use the dative). ⁹To suffer, leiden. ¹⁰In its proper time, zur rechten Zeit. ¹¹To print, drucken. ¹²About, über. ¹³Art, Kunst. ¹⁴Science, Wissenschaft. ¹⁵The speech, die Rede. ¹⁶See p. 78, note. ¹⁷Patience, Geduld. ¹⁸With, mit, with the dative. ¹⁹The comedy, das Lustspiel. ²⁰To accept, annehmen. ²¹The director, der Director (use the dative).

EXERCISE 37.—Where do you see it? Yonder in the garden.¹ Everywhere the winter will (say, will the winter²) be very cold. Come here; you will hear³ better.⁴ This dictionary⁵ is not good; these three words⁶ are⁷ not in it (say, within). Go in; you will find him in⁸ his room. Are they away already? (put *away* last). Yes, now⁹ they go (say, go they) away at¹⁰ seven o'clock.¹¹ Have you left¹² your book outside?¹³ We have *got* two bedrooms down-stairs, and four up-stairs. The bath-room¹⁴ is also up-stairs, and to the front.¹⁵ When does he come back? Come out; the sun¹⁶ is so warm.

¹Use the dative. ²The winter, der Winter. ³To hear, hören. ⁴Better, besser. ⁵The dictionary, das Wörterbuch (lit. book of words). ⁶The word, das Wort (see § 88). ⁷Are, sind or stehen. ⁸In, auf, with the dative. ⁹Now, jetzt. ¹⁰At, um. ¹¹O'clock, Uhr. ¹²To leave, lassen. ¹³Outside, draußen. ¹⁴The bath-room, das Badezimmer. ¹⁵To the front, nach vorn. ¹⁶The sun, die Sonne.

EXERCISE 38.—At that time many¹ emigrated² (say, emigrated many) to³ America. I met⁴ him afterwards very seldom. She has always lived⁵ very extravagantly.⁶ Their house has been let⁷ lately. Have you ever heard a more beautiful voice?⁸ The waiter⁹ has ordered¹⁰ them just now. Will my parasol¹¹ be ready¹² to-morrow? They had in the meantime taken the arms,¹³ and they rushed¹⁴ upon us.¹⁵ That poor family¹⁶ is still in great distress.¹⁷ His publishing business¹⁸ was formerly more important¹⁹ than that of [the] Messrs B. Shall I have the pleasure²⁰ of seeing²¹ you²² at his house²³ the day after to-morrow?

¹Many, viele. ²To emigrate, auswandern. ³To, nach. ⁴To meet, treffen. ⁵To live, leben. ⁶Extravagantly, verschwenderisch. ⁷To let, vermieten (use the passive). ⁸The voice, die Stimme. ⁹The waiter, der Kellner. ¹⁰To order, bestellen. ¹¹The parasol, der Sonnenschirm. ¹²To be ready, fertig sein. ¹³To take the arms, die Waffen ergreifen. ¹⁴To rush, sich stürzen. ¹⁵Upon us, auf uns. ¹⁶The family, die Familie. ¹⁷The distress, die Verdrängniß (use the dative). ¹⁸The publishing business, das Verlagsgeschäft. ¹⁹Important, wichtig. ²⁰The pleasure, das Vergnügen. ²¹Of seeing, zu sehen. ²²Arrange: you the day after to-morrow at his house to see. ²³At his house, bei ihm.

EXERCISE 39.—I would have painted¹ it differently (say, otherwise). Shall we translate it orally, or by writing? I shall not understand him if he does not speak louder. Which of² the officers³ was longest on leave?⁴ He believes blindly all that⁵ one relates⁶ to him. We have had lately (in der letzten Zeit) an extremely unsettled⁷ weather, but it has improved a little⁸ since⁹ yesterday. Which girl writes best? I shall set out next Wednesday¹⁰ at the latest. My sisters desire to be most kindly remembered to you and Mr N. These two brothers do everything¹¹ most conscientiously. Smallest are the flowers which grow¹² on this flower-bed.¹³

¹ To paint, malen. ² Of, von, with the dative. ³ The officer, der Offizier (see § 89). ⁴ On leave, auf Urlaub. ⁵ All that, Alles was. ⁶ To relate, erzählen (say, what one to him relates). ⁷ Unsettled, unbeständig. ⁸ A little, etwas (say, since yesterday a little). ⁹ Since, seit. ¹⁰ Next Wednesday, nächsten Mittwoch (say, at the latest next Wednesday). ¹¹ Everything, Alles. ¹² To grow, wachsen (say, which on this flower-bed grow). ¹³ The flower-bed, das Beet (use the dative).

EXERCISE 40.—My tea¹ is far² too sweet.³ He has conducted himself almost as badly⁴ (say, he has himself almost as badly conducted) as last week.⁵ This thistle⁶ is by far the prettiest⁷ [that] we have found.⁸ My friend⁹ has in some degree satisfied¹⁰ her mother. Scarcely were we done,¹¹ when¹² it began¹³ to rain.¹⁴ He has known¹⁵ scarcely two lines.¹⁶ This merchant has lost nearly two thousand pounds.¹⁷ The month of April¹⁸ has only thirty days. He has got¹⁹ by far the largest share.²⁰ They have in some degree succeeded²¹ to excuse themselves.²² This business has been most lucrative²³ these (say, in the) last years.²⁴

¹ The tea, der Thee. ² Far, viel. ³ Sweet, süß. ⁴ As badly, so schlecht. ⁵ Last week, vorige Woche. ⁶ The thistle, die Distel. ⁷ Pretty, schön. ⁸ Arrange, we found have. ⁹ My friend, meine Freundin. ¹⁰ To satisfy, befriedigen (arrange, has her mother in some degree satisfied). ¹¹ Done, fertig. ¹² When, als. ¹³ To begin, anfangen (arrange, it to rain began). ¹⁴ To rain, zu regnen. ¹⁵ Use können. ¹⁶ The lines, die Zeile. ¹⁷ Pounds, Pfund. ¹⁸ April, April. ¹⁹ To get, bekommen. ²⁰ The share, das Theil. ²¹ They have . . . succeeded, es ist ihnen . . . gelungen. ²² To excuse themselves, sich zu entschuldigen. ²³ Lucrative, einträglich (arrange: in the last years most lucrative). ²⁴ The last year, das letzte Jahr (use the dative plural).

EXERCISE 41.—Have you invited¹ him? Certainly *I have*. Did she really laugh² at it?³ Yes, *she did*. That lady will surely leave a great deal of money.⁴ Very probably she will⁵ bequeath⁶ considerable⁷ sums⁸ to the new hospital.⁹ He will not at all accept¹⁰ that office.¹¹ They have indeed very little¹² time; they shall, however,¹³ do it.¹⁴ I am by no means responsible for it,¹⁵ as¹⁶ you think. Do you absolutely insist upon it?¹⁷ Certainly. He has not at all ill-used¹⁸ them; on

the contrary,¹⁹ he has treated²⁰ them with much kindness.²¹ Surely you shall²² find that he spits²³ blood. We were (say, had) by no means wrong; ²⁴ quite²⁵ on the contrary.

¹ To invite, einladen. ² To laugh, lachen. ³ At it, darüber. ⁴ A great deal of money, sehr viel Geld. ⁵ Say, will she. ⁶ To bequeath, vermachen. ⁷ Considerable, bedeutend. ⁸ The sum, die Summe. ⁹ The hospital, das Hospital or Krankenhaus (say, to the new hospital considerable sums). ¹⁰ To accept, annehmen. ¹¹ The office, das Amt. ¹² Very little, sehr wenig. ¹³ However, doch. ¹⁴ Say, it however do. ¹⁵ Responsible for it, dafür verantwortlich. ¹⁶ As, wie. ¹⁷ Upon it, darauf. ¹⁸ To ill-use, mißhandeln (see § 61, note). ¹⁹ On the contrary, im Gegentheil. ²⁰ To treat, behandeln. ²¹ With much kindness, mit vieler. ²² Say, shall you. ²³ To spit, speien (say, that he blood spits). ²⁴ Wrong, Unrecht. ²⁵ Quite, ganz.

EXERCISE 42.—People are coming from church¹ (say, come from the church). He will not go, on principle.² Beside us, he has (say, has he) three pupils, a German³ and two Frenchmen.⁴ With whom did he go out? With his friend Charles; he wanted⁵ to take a walk with him. Where to?⁶ To the little town⁷ which you like so much.⁸ With (say, in) what intention has he done it? For what purpose⁹ does one¹⁰ use¹¹ this? Where does he live¹² now? At D., near Edinburgh.¹³ He had (say, was) just¹⁴ arrived from London when we met¹⁵ him. After three days he said (say, said he) to me he would not accept it. To my great joy¹⁶ he will stay¹⁷ several¹⁸ days with¹⁹ us.

¹ The church, die Kirche. ² On principle, aus Grundsatz. ³ The German, der Deutsche. ⁴ The Frenchman, der Franzose. ⁵ To want, wollen. ⁶ Where to, wohin. ⁷ The little town, das Städtchen. ⁸ To like so much, so gern haben. ⁹ The purpose, der Zweck. ¹⁰ One, man. ¹¹ To use, gebrauchen. ¹² To live, wohnen. ¹³ Edinburgh, Edinburg. ¹⁴ Just, eben. ¹⁵ To meet, treffen (say, when we him met). ¹⁶ The joy, die Freude. ¹⁷ To stay, sich aufhalten. ¹⁸ Several, mehrere. ¹⁹ With, bei.

EXERCISE 43.—I went through the whole¹ town, but I did not find him (say, found him but not). Towards three o'clock we lost (say, lost we) all patience.² Whoever³ is not for me, is against (gegen or wider) me. This woman has been very cruel⁴ to her child. Everywhere⁵ in the whole country⁶ the number⁷ of [the] crimes⁸ has decreased⁹ (say, has the number, &c.). That old sailor¹⁰ has three times¹¹ made the journey¹² round¹³ the world.¹⁴ This¹⁵ is the best medicine¹⁶ against [the] gout;¹⁷ I can recommend¹⁸ it to you. This is a very good fodder¹⁹ for cattle,²⁰ but not for horses. She did it against my permission,²¹ and must be punished.²² When will the train²³ start?²⁴ At ten minutes to nine.

¹ Whole, ganz. ² All patience, alle Geduld. ³ Whoever, wer. ⁴ Cruel, grausam (say, against her child very cruel). ⁵ Everywhere, überall.

⁶ The country, das Land. ⁷ The number, die Zahl. ⁸ The crime, das Verbrechen. ⁹ To decrease, abnehmen. ¹⁰ The sailor, der Matrose. ¹¹ Say, the journey round the world three times. ¹² The journey, die Reise. ¹³ Round, um. ¹⁴ The world, die Welt. ¹⁵ This, dies. ¹⁶ The medicine, das Mittel. ¹⁷ The gout, die Gicht. ¹⁸ To recommend, empfehlen. ¹⁹ The fodder, das Futter. ²⁰ Cattle, Rindvieh. ²¹ The permission, die Erlaubniß. ²² To punish, bestrafen. ²³ The train, der Zug. ²⁴ To start, abgehen.

EXERCISE 44.—Geneva¹ is one of the finest towns in Switzerland.² It³ lies on the Rhone.⁴ Where are your sisters? They sit⁵ in the garden on the seat⁶ in front of [before] the house, and read. Let us go⁷ under the trees; it is too hot⁸ here. In this language⁹ they have not [has one . . . not] this expression.¹⁰ These grapes weigh over a pound. We have now spoken long enough about the verb.¹¹ The children crept into the room without being [to be] observed.¹² All my friends went (say, travelled) home three days ago (say, before three days). The holidays¹³ will last over a month.¹⁴ Where have you put¹⁵ my keys?¹⁶ On the little table before the sofa.¹⁷ Have you got accustomed to our climate?¹⁸ (say, have you accustomed yourself?¹⁹) He renounces²⁰ this sum of money.

¹ Geneva, Genf. ² Switzerland, die Schweiz. ³ It, es. ⁴ The Rhone, die Rhone. ⁵ To sit, sitzen. ⁶ The seat, die Bank. ⁷ Let us go, laßt uns or lassen Sie uns . . . gehen. ⁸ Hot, heiß. ⁹ The language, die Sprache. ¹⁰ The expression, der Ausdruck. ¹¹ The verb, das Verb. ¹² Without being observed, ohne bemerkt zu werden. ¹³ The holidays, die Ferien. ¹⁴ The month, der Monat. ¹⁵ Put, hingestellt. ¹⁶ The key, der Schlüssel. ¹⁷ The sofa, das Sofa. ¹⁸ The climate, das Klima. ¹⁹ To accustom one's self to, sich gewöhnen an, with the accusative. ²⁰ To renounce, verzichten auf, with the accusative.

EXERCISE 45.—He will pay¹ the fine,² but only³ for the sake of his friend. On account of his bad⁴ health,⁵ he will (say, will he) go to the south of France.⁶ We lived in a small country-house not far from that village. Notwithstanding every precaution,⁷ the disease⁸ was spreading⁹ (say, spread the disease [round itself]). During the week,¹⁰ many strangers¹¹ have (say, are many strangers) arrived. In conformity with her promise,¹² she has during all her life (say, has she during her whole life) maintained¹³ several¹⁴ poor children. We ask¹⁵ to be¹⁶ admitted.¹⁷ By virtue of this permission¹⁸ we have (say, have we) that right.¹⁹ Outside the town the snow²⁰ had (say, was the snow) not yet disappeared.²¹ According to his story,²² two men have (say, have two men) attacked²³ him in²⁴ the street.

¹ To pay, bezahlen. ² The fine, die Geldstrafe. ³ Only, nur. ⁴ Bad, schlecht. ⁵ The health, die Gesundheit. ⁶ The south of France, Südfrankreich. ⁷ The precaution, die Vorsicht. ⁸ The disease, die Krankheit. ⁹ To spread, greifen . . . um sich. ¹⁰ The week, die Woche. ¹¹ The

stranger, der Fremde. ¹² The promise, das Versprechen. ¹³ To maintain, unterhalten. ¹⁴ Several, mehrere. ¹⁵ To ask, verlangen. ¹⁶ and ¹⁷ To be admitted, zugelassen zu werden. ¹⁸ The permission, die Erlaubniß. ¹⁹ The right, das Recht. ²⁰ The snow, der Schnee. ²¹ To disappear, verschwinden (see § 48). ²² The story, die Geschichte. ²³ To attack, angreifen. ²⁴ In, auf (with the dative).

EXERCISE 46.—Professor and Mrs S. (say, Professor S. and *his* wife) ¹ send their best regards. ² We shall never act contrary to our conviction. ³ According to your wishes, ⁴ I have (say, have I) invited ⁵ him also. Where shall ⁶ I wait for ⁷ you? Where you like; ⁸ opposite the station ⁹ or [the] post-office. ¹⁰ Since the fifteenth of March, ¹¹ I have (say, have I) not had the slightest ¹² opportunity ¹³ to speak to him. ¹⁴ The whole manufactory, ¹⁵ together with the dwelling-house, ¹⁶ has (say, is) burnt down. ¹⁷ Within a week he will (say, will he) have spent ¹⁸ everything. ¹⁹ A splendid ²⁰ new palace ²¹ is [being] built opposite the town's library. ²²

¹ And his wife, und or nebst Frau. ² Send their best regards, lassen freundlichst grüßen. ³ The conviction, die Ueberzeugung. ⁴ The wish, der Wunsch. ⁵ To invite, einladen. ⁶ Shall, use sollen. ⁷ For, auf (with the accusative). ⁸ To like, wollen. ⁹ The station, der Bahnhof. ¹⁰ The post-office, die Post. ¹¹ March, März. ¹² Slight, klein. ¹³ The opportunity, die Gelegenheit. ¹⁴ To speak to him, ihn zu sprechen. ¹⁵ The manufactory, die Fabrik. ¹⁶ The dwelling-house, das Wohnhaus. ¹⁷ To burn down, abbrennen. ¹⁸ To spend, ausgeben. ¹⁹ Everything, Alles. ²⁰ Splendid, prachtvoll. ²¹ The palace, der Palast. ²² The town's library, die Stadtbibliothek.

EXERCISE 47.—He followed ¹ [to] me to (say, till, bis zu) the door. Up to this day ² I have (say, am I) always been satisfied ³ with you. All except one ⁴ have become celebrated. ⁵ Without his great negligence, ⁶ he would have succeeded ⁷ in satisfying ⁸ his master. ⁹ The commercial house ¹⁰ of R. Brothers ¹¹ has ¹² always paid regularly ¹³ up to (say, till) last ¹⁴ year. We shall put it off till next year. They walked along that tedious ¹⁵ wall ¹⁶ in the hope of finding ¹⁷ a gate. Without the least trouble, ¹⁸ they have (say, have they) played several ¹⁹ pieces. ²⁰ Sit down beside your sister, you will see the stage ²¹ better. ²²

¹ To follow, folgen. ² See § 153, note. ³ Satisfied, zufrieden (say, with you satisfied). ⁴ See § 153, note. ⁵ Celebrated, berühmt. ⁶ [The] negligence, die Nachlässigkeit. ⁷ He would have succeeded, würde es ihm gelungen sein. ⁸ In satisfying, zu befriedigen (say, his master in satisfying). ⁹ The master, der Herr. ¹⁰ The commercial house, das Handelshaus. ¹¹ Of R. Brothers, der Gebrüder R. ¹² Arrange: has up to last year always regularly paid. ¹³ Regularly, regelmäßig. ¹⁴ Last, vorig. ¹⁵ Tedious, langweilig. ¹⁶ Wall, Mauer (f.). ¹⁷ In the hope of finding, in der Hoffnung

... zu finden. ¹⁸ The least trouble, die geringste Mühe. ¹⁹ Several, mehrere.
²⁰ The piece, das Stück. ²¹ The stage, die Bühne. ²² Better, besser.

EXERCISE 48.—The poor man was astonished,¹ and wanted² to thank [to] you, but you were gone³ already. He always seemed⁴ to be very honest;⁵ and yet he betrayed⁶ all your secrets.⁷ We shall give up⁸ all our rights, but only⁹ for the sake¹⁰ of peace.¹¹ To-day I am (say, am I) not quite well;¹² I shall therefore stay¹³ at home. We shall go, partly out of conviction,¹⁴ partly out of esteem¹⁵ for him. I am sorry¹⁶ to hear it,¹⁷ for he did not deserve¹⁸ that new misfortune. One would understand it if you had neither relations¹⁹ nor friends. 'You must,' he said (say, said he), 'either hold your tongue [be silent]²⁰ or go.' He feared²¹ to be expelled,²² otherwise he would (say, would he) not have worked so well²³ of late.²⁴

¹ To be astonished, erstaunen. ² To want, wollen. ³ Gone, fort (to be placed after *already*). ⁴ To seem to be, scheinen . . . zu sein. ⁵ Honest, ehrlich. ⁶ To betray, verrathen (say, betrayed he). ⁷ The secret, das Geheimniß. ⁸ To give up, aufgeben. ⁹ Only, nur. ¹⁰ See § 151. ¹¹ [The] peace, der Friede. ¹² Well, wohl. ¹³ To stay, bleiben. ¹⁴ Conviction, Ueberzeugung. ¹⁵ Esteem, Achtung. ¹⁶ I am sorry, es thut mir leid. ¹⁷ Say, it to (zu) hear. ¹⁸ To deserve, verdienen. ¹⁹ The relation, der Verwandte. ²⁰ To be silent, schweigen. ²¹ To fear, fürchten. ²² To expel, relegiren (say, expelled to [zu] be, *passive*). ²³ Well, gut. ²⁴ Of late, in der letzten Zeit (to be placed before *so well*).

EXERCISE 49.—Tell your brother that he must come with you. Since his tutor¹ is unwell,² and must keep his room,³ his father will surely allow it. She does as if she knew⁴ nothing about it.⁵ When he travels,⁶ he stops⁷ several days in every town. When I was lately⁸ in the Zoological Garden⁹ at Berlin, I saw for the first time¹⁰ two beautiful ostriches.¹¹ When they (say, one) said that to her, she shrugged¹² her (say, the) shoulders,¹³ and would¹⁴ not believe it. Before you go, I would like¹⁵ to beg¹⁶ you to think again¹⁷ about it.¹⁸ Had one known that sooner,¹⁹ one would have exerted²⁰ one's self sooner to make that river navigable.²¹

¹ The tutor, der Hauslehrer. ² Unwell, unwohl. ³ To keep his room, das Zimmer hüten. ⁴ To know, wissen (use the *subj. present*). ⁵ About it, davon. ⁶ To travel, reisen. ⁷ To stop, sich aufhalten. ⁸ Lately, neulich. ⁹ The Zoological Garden at Berlin, der Berliner Zoologische Garten. ¹⁰ For the first time, zum ersten Male. ¹¹ The ostrich, der Strauß (see § 88). ¹² To shrug, zucken. ¹³ The shoulder, die Achsel. ¹⁴ Would, use wollen. ¹⁵ I would like, ich möchte. ¹⁶ To beg . . . to, bitten . . . zu. ¹⁷ Again, noch einmal. ¹⁸ To think about it, darüber nachzudenken. ¹⁹ Sooner, früher. ²⁰ To exert one's self . . . to, sich bemühen . . . zu. ²¹ Navigable, schiffbar.

ALPHABETICAL LIST OF STRONG AND IRREGULAR VERBS.

Those marked with an asterisk change their radical vowel in the second and third persons singular of the present indicative, and, if it be e, also in the second person singular of the imperative, according to the rule stated in § 41, 5.

| INFINITIVE. | IMPERFECT. | PAST PARTICIPLE. | PRESENT CONDITIONAL. |
|---|----------------------|------------------|------------------------|
| *backen, to bake, | back, | gebacken, | büfe. |
| *befehlen, to command, | befahl, | befohlen, | beföhle. |
| (ſich) beſleißen, to
apply one's ſelf, | beſließ, | beſliſſen, | beſliſſe. |
| beginnen, to begin, | begann, | begonnen, | begönne. |
| beißen, to bite, | biß, | gebißen, | biſſe. |
| *bergen, to hide, | barg, | geborgen, | bärge. |
| *berſten, to burſt, | barſt, | geborſten, | bärſte. |
| betrügen, to deceive, | betrog, | betrogen, | betröge. |
| bewegen, to induce, | bewog, | berogen, | bewöge. |
| biegen, to bend, | bog, | gebogen, | böge. |
| bieten, to bid, offer, | bot, | geboten, | böte. |
| binden, to bind, | band, | gebunden, | bände. |
| bitten, to beg, | bat, | gebeten, | bäte. |
| *blaſen, to blow, | bließ, | geblaſen, | blieſe. |
| bleiben, to remain, | blieb, | geblieben, | bliebe. |
| *braten, to roaſt, | briet, | gebraten, | briete. |
| *brechen, to break, | brach, | gebrochen, | bräche. |
| brennen, to burn, | brannte, | gebrannt, | brennte. |
| bringen, to bring, | brachte, | gebracht, | brächte. |
| denken, to think, | dachte, | gedacht, | dächte. |
| dingen, to hire, | dingte, | gedungen, | dingte. |
| *dreſchen, to thrash, | droſch or
draſch, | gedroſchen, | dröſche or
dräſche. |

| INFINITIVE. | IMPERFECT. | PAST PARTICIPLE. | PRESENT CONDITIONAL. |
|---|---|---|--|
| bringen, to press,
dürfen, to be permitted (<i>Pres. Indic.</i> darf, darfst, darf; dürfen, dürst, dürfen), | drang,
durfte, | gedrungen,
gedurft, | dränge.
dürfte. |
| *empfehlen, to recommend,
erbleichen, to turn pale, | empfohl,
erblich, | empfohlen,
erblichen, | empfohle.
erbliche. |
| *erlöschen, to become extinguished (<i>Pres. Indic.</i> erlösche, erlischt, erlischt),
erschallen, to resound, | erlosch,
erscholl, | erloschen,
erschollen, | erlösche.
erschölle. |
| *erschrecken, to be frightened,
*essen, to eat, | erschrak,
aß, | erschrocken,
geessen, | erschreke.
äße. |
| *fahren, to drive or go in a conveyance,
*fallen, to fall, | fuhr,
fiel, | gefahren,
gefallen, | führe.
fielen. |
| *fangen, to catch,
*fechten, to fight,
finden, to find, | fieng,
focht,
fand, | gefangen,
gefochten,
gefunden, | finde.
föchte.
fände. |
| *flechten, to twine,
fliegen, to fly,
fliehen, to flee,
fließen, to flow, | flocht,
flog,
floh,
floß, | geflochten,
geflogen,
geflohen,
geflossen, | flöchte.
flöge.
flöhe
flöße. |
| *fressen, to eat (said of beasts),
frieren, to freeze,
gähren, to ferment, | fraß,
fror,
gohr, | gefressen,
gefroren,
gegohren, | fräße.
fröre.
göhere. |
| *gebären, to bring forth (<i>Pres. Indic.</i> gebäre, gebierst, gebiert),
*geben, to give,
gedeihen, to prosper,
gehen, to go,
gelingen, to succeed, | gebar,
gab,
gedieh,
ging,
gelang, | geboren,
gegeben,
gediehen,
gegangen,
gelungen, | gebäre.
gäbe.
gediehe.
ginge.
gelänge. |

| INFINITIVE. | IMPERFECT. | PAST PARTICIPLE. | PRESENT CONDITIONAL. |
|---|------------|------------------|----------------------|
| *gelten, to be worth, | galt, | gegolten, | gälte or gölte. |
| genesen, to recover from illness, | genaß, | genesen, | genäße. |
| genießen, to enjoy, | genoß, | genossen, | genöffe. |
| *geschehen, to happen, | geschah, | geschehen, | geschähe. |
| gewinnen, to win, | gewann, | gewonnen, | gewänne or gewönne. |
| gießen, to pour, | goß, | gegossen, | göffe. |
| gleich, to resemble, | glich, | geglichen, | gliche. |
| gleiten, to glide, | glitt, | geglitten, | glitte. |
| glimmen, to glimmer, | glomm, | geglommen, | glömme. |
| *graben, to dig, | grub, | gegraben, | grübe. |
| greifen, to seize, | griff, | gegriffen, | griffe. |
| *halten, to hold, | hielt, | gehalten, | hielte. |
| *hängen, to hang, | hing, | gehängen, | hinge. |
| hauen, to hew, | hieb, | gehauen, | hiebe. |
| heben, to lift, | hob, | gehoben, | höbe or hübe. |
| heißen, to be called, | hieß, | geheißen, | hieße. |
| *helfen, to help, | half, | geholfen, | hülfe. |
| feisen, to chide, | fiff, | gefiffen, | fiffe. |
| fennen, to know, | kannte, | gekannt, | kennte. |
| flimmen, to climb, | flomm, | geflommen, | flömme. |
| flingen, to sound, | flang, | geflungen, | flänge. |
| fneifen, to pinch, | kniff, | gekniffen, | kniffe. |
| fommen, to come, | fam, | gekommen, | fäme. |
| fönnen, (can) or to be able (<i>Pres. Indic.</i> fann, fannst, fann; können, könnt, können), | fönnte, | gefönnt, | fönnte. |
| frieden, to creep, | froch, | gefrochen, | froche. |
| laden, to load, | lud, | geladen, | lüde. |
| *lassen, to let, | ließ, | gelassen, | ließe. |
| *laufen, to run, | lief, | gelaufen, | liese. |
| leiden, to suffer, | litt, | gelitten, | litte. |
| leihen, to lend, | lieh, | geliehen, | liehe. |

| INFINITIVE. | IMPERFECT. | PAST PARTICIPLE. | PRESENT CONDITIONAL. |
|--|---|--|---|
| *lesen, to read,
liegen, to lie,
lügen, to tell a lie,
meiden, to avoid,
melken, to milk,
*messen, to measure,
mögen, (may) or to like (<i>Pres. Indic.</i> mag, magst, mag;
mögen, mögt, mögen),
müssen, (must) or to be obliged (<i>Pres. Indic.</i> muß, mußt, muß;
müssen, müßt, müssen),
*nehmen, to take (<i>Pres. Indic.</i> nehme, nimmst, nimmt),
nennen, to name,
pfeifen, to whistle,
pflegen, to practise,
preisen, to praise,
*quellen, to spring forth,
*rathen, to advise,
reiben, to rub,
reißen, to tear,
reiten, to ride,
rennen, to run,
riechen, to smell,
ringen, to wring,
rinnen, to flow,
rufen, to call,
*saufen, to drink (said of beasts),
saugen, to suck,
schaffen, to create,
scheiden, to part,
scheinen, to shine, | laß,
lag,
log,
mied,
molf,
maß,
mochte,

mußte,

nahm,

nannte,
pfiß,
pflog,
pries,
quoll,
rieth,
rieb,
riß,
ritt,
rannte,
roch,
rang,
rann,
rief,
soß,

fog,
schuf,
schied,
schien, | gelesen,
gelegen,
gelogen,
gemieden,
gemolken,
gemessen,
gemocht,

gemußt,

genommen,

genannt,
gepfiffen,
gepflogen,
gepriesen,
gequollen,
gerathen,
gerieben,
gerissen,
geritten,
gerannt,
gerochen,
gerungen,
geronnen,
gerufen,
gesoffen,

gesogen,
geschaffen,
geschieden,
geschienen, | läse.
läge.
löge.
miede.
mölfte.
mäße.
möchte.

mußte.

nahmte.

nennte.
pfiße.
pflöge.
prieße.
quölle.
riethe.
riebe.
risse.
ritte.
rennte.
röche.
ränge.
ränne.
riefe.
söffe.

söge.
schüße.
schiede.
schiene. |

| INF. ACTIVE. | IMPERFECT. | PAST PARTICIPLE. | PRESENT CONDITIONAL. |
|--|--------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| *schelten, to chide, | schalt, | gescholten, | schälte |
| *scheren, to shear, | schor, | geschoren, | schöre. |
| schieben, to shove, | schob, | geschoben, | schöbe. |
| schießen, to shoot, | schuß, | geschossen, | schöffe. |
| schinden, to flay, | schund, | geschunden, | schünde. |
| *schlafen, to sleep, | schief, | geschlafen, | schliefe. |
| *schlagen, to strike, | schlug, | geschlagen, | schlüge. |
| schleichen, to sneak, | schlich, | geschlichen, | schliche. |
| schleifen, to grind, | schliff, | geschliffen, | schliffe. |
| schleißen, to slit, | schliß, | geschliffen, | schlisse. |
| schließen, to shut, | schloß, | geschlossen, | schlöße. |
| schlingen, to swallow, | schlang, | geschlungen, | schlänge. |
| schmeißen, to fling, | schmiß, | geschmissen, | schmisse. |
| *schmelzen, to melt, | schmolz, | geschmolzen, | schmölze. |
| schmauchen, to snort, | schmuck, | geschmuckten, | schmücke. |
| scheiden, to cut, | schnitt, | geschnitten, | schnitte. |
| schrauben, to screw, | schraub, | geschraubt, | schraube. |
| schreiben, to write, | schrieb, | geschrieben, | schriebe. |
| schreien, to cry, | schrie, | geschrieen, | schrie. |
| schreiten, to stride, | schritt, | geschritten, | schritte. |
| schwären, to swear, | schwor, | geschworen, | schwöre. |
| schweigen, to be silent, | schwie, | geschwiegen, | schwiege. |
| *schwellen, to swell, | schwell, | geschwollen, | schwölle. |
| schwimmen, to swim, | schwamm, | geschwommen, | schwämme. |
| schwinden, to vanish, | schwand, | geschwunden, | schwände. |
| schwingen, to swing, | schwang, | geschwungen, | schwänge. |
| schwören, to swear, | schwor or schwur, | geschworen, | schwüre or schwöre. |
| *sehen, to see, | sah, | gesehen, | sähe. |
| sein, to be (<i>Pres. Indic.</i> bin, bist, ist; <i>Ind.</i> sind, seid, <i>Conj.</i> sei), | war, | gewesen, | wäre. |
| senden, to send, | sandte or sendete, | gesandt or gesendet, | sendete. |
| sieden, to boil (<i>intr.</i>), | sott, | gesotten, | sötte. |
| singen, to sing, | sang, | gesungen, | sänge. |
| sinken, to sink, | sank, | gesunken, | sänke. |
| sinnen, to meditate, | sann, | gesonnen, | sänne. |

| INFINITIVE. | IMPERFECT. | PAST PARTICIPLE. | PRESENT CONDITIONAL. |
|---|--|---|---|
| sitzen, to sit,
sollen, (shall) or to be
obliged (<i>Pres. Indic.</i>
soll, sollst, soll, &c.),
speien, to spit,
spinnen, to spin,
spalten, to split,
*sprechen, to speak,
sprießen, to sprout,
springen, to spring,
*stechen, to sting,
stehen, to stand,
*stehlen, to steal, | saß,
sollte,

spie,
spann,
spalt,
sprach,
sproß,
sprang,
stach,
stand,
stahl, | gesehen,
gesollt,

gespieen,
gesponnen,
gespalten,
gesprochen,
gesprossen,
gesprungen,
gestochen,
gestanden,
gestohlen, | säße.
sollte.

spiee.
spanne.
spalte.
spräche.
spröße.
spränge.
stäche.
stände.
stähle or
stöhle. |
| steigen, to mount,
*sterben, to die,
stieben, to be scattered,
stinken, to stink,
*stoßen, to push,
streichen, to stroke,
streiten, to contend,
thun, to do,
*tragen, to carry,
*treffen, to hit,
treiben, to drive,
*treten, to tread (<i>Pres.</i>
<i>In. trete, trittst, tritt</i>),
triefen, to drip,
trinken, to drink,
*verderben, to spoil,
verdrießen, to vex,
*vergessen, to forget,
verlieren, to lose,
*verlöschen, to become
extinguished (see
erlöschen),
verschallen, to cease
sounding, | stieg,
starb,
stob,
stank,
stieß,
strich,
stritt,
that,
trug,
traf,
trieb,
trat,

troff,
trauf,
verdarb,
verdroß,
vergaß,
verlor,
verlosch,

verscholl, | gestiegen,
gestorben,
gestoben,
gestunken,
gestoßen,
gestrichen,
gestritten,
gethan,
getragen,
getroffen,
getrieben,
getreten,

getroffen,
getrunken,
verdorben,
verdrossen,
vergeßen,
verloren,
verloschen,

verschollen, | stiege.
stürbe.
stöbe.
stänke.
stieße.
striche.
stritte.
thäte.
trüge.
träfe.
triebe.
träte.

tröffe.
tränke.
verdürbe.
verdröffe.
vergäße.
verlöre.
verlösche.

verschölle. |

| INFINITIVE. | IMPERFECT. | PAST PARTICIPLE. | PRESENT CONDITIONAL. |
|---|--|--|--|
| * <i>wachsen</i> , to grow,
<i>wägen</i> , to weigh (tr.), | <i>wuchs</i> ,
<i>wog</i> , | <i>gewachsen</i> ,
<i>gewogen</i> , | <i>wüchse</i> .
<i>wöge</i> . |
| * <i>waschen</i> , to wash,
<i>weben</i> , to weave,
<i>weichen</i> , to yield,
<i>weisen</i> , to shew,
<i>wenden</i> , to turn, | <i>wusch</i> ,
<i>wob</i> ,
<i>wich</i>
<i>wies</i> ,
<i>wandte</i> or
<i>wendete</i> , | <i>gewaschen</i> ,
<i>gewoben</i> ,
<i>gewichen</i> ,
<i>gewiesen</i> ,
<i>gewandt</i> or
<i>gewendet</i> , | <i>wüsche</i> .
<i>wöbe</i> .
<i>wiche</i> .
<i>wiese</i> .
<i>wendete</i> . |
| * <i>werben</i> , to sue, | <i>warb</i> , | <i>geworben</i> , | <i>würbe</i> . |
| * <i>werden</i> , to become
(<i>Pres. Indic.</i> <i>werde</i> ,
<i>wirst</i> , <i>wird</i> , &c.), | <i>ward</i> or
<i>wurde</i> , | <i>geworden</i> , | <i>würde</i> . |
| * <i>werfen</i> , to throw, | <i>warf</i> , | <i>geworfen</i> , | <i>würfe</i> or
<i>würfe</i> . |
| <i>wiegen</i> , to weigh (int.),
<i>winden</i> , to wind,
<i>wissen</i> , to know (<i>Pres.</i>
<i>Indic.</i> <i>weiß</i> , <i>weißt</i> ,
<i>weiß</i> ; <i>wissen</i> , <i>wisset</i> ,
<i>wissen</i>), | <i>wog</i> ,
<i>wand</i> ,
<i>wußte</i> , | <i>gewogen</i> ,
<i>gerunden</i> ,
<i>geruht</i> , | <i>wöge</i> .
<i>wände</i> .
<i>wüßte</i> . |
| <i>wollen</i> , to will (<i>Pres.</i>
<i>Indic.</i> <i>will</i> , <i>willst</i> ,
<i>will</i> ; <i>wollen</i> , <i>wollt</i> ,
<i>wollen</i>), | <i>wollte</i> , | <i>gewollt</i> , | <i>wollte</i> . |
| <i>zeihen</i> , to accuse,
<i>ziehen</i> , to pull,
<i>zwingen</i> , to force, | <i>zieh</i> ,
<i>zog</i> ,
<i>zwang</i> , | <i>geziehen</i> ,
<i>gezogen</i> ,
<i>gezwungen</i> , | <i>ziehe</i> .
<i>zöge</i> .
<i>zwänge</i> . |

ALPHABETICAL INDEX OF ENGLISH WORDS

OCCURRING IN THE EXERCISES,

WITH REFERENCE TO THE PAGE WHERE THE GERMAN
EQUIVALENT IS GIVEN.

The Letters *m. f. n.* denote Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter Gender.

| ENGLISH. | GERMAN. | PAGE | ENGLISH. | GERMAN. | PAGE |
|--|---------------------------|------|-----------------|---------------------------|---------|
| Abbot..... | Abt, <i>m.</i> | 80 | Affair..... | Handel, <i>m.</i> | 70 |
| Able..... | tüchtig..... | 89 | Affliction..... | Betrübniß, <i>f.</i> | 64 |
| About..... | bei..... | 114 | Afterwards..... | nachher..... | 116 |
| " (concern-
ing)..... | über..... | 124 | Against..... | gegen..... | 122 |
| Above..... | oben..... | 115 | Age..... | Alter, <i>n.</i> | 58 |
| Absence..... | Abwesenheit, <i>f.</i> .. | 125 | Agreeable..... | erfreulich..... | 93 |
| Absolutely..... | durchaus..... | 120 | Ail, to..... | fehlen..... | 104 |
| Abuse, to..... | mißbrauchen..... | 53 | Air..... | Luft, <i>f.</i> | 73 |
| Accept, to..... | annehmen..... | 128 | Alight, to..... | aus-steigen..... | 43 |
| Accident..... | Unglücksfall, <i>m.</i> | 102 | Alive..... | am Leben..... | 117 |
| Accompany, to. | begleiten..... | 44 | Allow, to..... | lassen..... | 43, 49 |
| Account..... | Nachricht, <i>f.</i> | 93 | Almond..... | Mandel, <i>f.</i> | 89 |
| Account (bill)... | Rechnung, <i>f.</i> | 116 | Almost..... | fast..... | 119 |
| Accuse, to..... | zeihen..... | 42 | Along with..... | nebst..... | 125 |
| Accustom, to... | gewöhnen..... | 97 | Already..... | schon, bereits..... | 116 |
| Acquaintances... | Bekannte..... | 115 | Alter, to..... | ändern..... | 96 |
| Acquainted..... | bekannt..... | 22 | Always..... | immer..... | 36, 117 |
| Acquit, to..... | freisprechen..... | 130 | America..... | Amerika, <i>n.</i> | 82 |
| Across..... | über..... | 124 | American..... | Amerikaner, <i>m.</i> .. | 102 |
| Act (of a play). Aufzug, <i>m.</i> | | 109 | Amount to, to.. | betragen..... | 84 |
| Act, to..... | handeln..... | 126 | Amusement..... | Vergnügung, <i>f.</i> | 115 |
| Actor..... | Acteur, <i>m.</i> | 80 | Ancestor..... | Uhn, <i>m.</i> | 77 |
| Adjoining..... | anstoßend..... | 90 | "..... | Vorfahr, <i>m.</i> | 75 |
| Admire, to..... | bewundern..... | 79 | Ancient..... | alt, ehemalig.... | 83 |
| Admit, to..... | zulassen..... | 90 | And..... | und..... | 127 |
| Adorn, to..... | schmücken..... | 52 | Angel..... | Engel, <i>m.</i> | 57 |
| Advance, to..... | vorrücken..... | 122 | Anguish..... | Angst, <i>f.</i> | 59 |
| Adversity..... | Unglück, <i>n.</i> | 128 | Animal..... | Thier, <i>n.</i> | 62 |
| Advice..... | Rath, <i>m.</i> | 30 | Answer, to..... | antworten..... | 43 |
| Advise, to..... | rathen..... | 43 | Anybody..... | Seemand..... | 106 |
| | | | Anything..... | etwas..... | 39, 107 |

| | PAGE | | PAGE |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------|---|-------------------------------|
| Anywhere..... | irgendwo..... 116 | Band-box..... | Schachtel, <i>f</i> 62 |
| Apartment..... | Gemach, <i>n</i> 73 | Bank (of a river). Ufer, <i>n</i> | 123 |
| Apartments..... | Gemächer, <i>n</i> 52 | Banker..... | Banquier, <i>m</i> 80 |
| Apothecary's | | Barn..... | Scheuer, <i>f</i> 63 |
| shop..... | Apotheke, <i>f</i>126 | Barrister..... | Anwalt, <i>m</i>106 |
| Appear, to..... | scheinen..... 93 | Basin..... | Becken, <i>n</i> 63 |
| Apple..... | Apfel, <i>m</i> 70 | Basle..... | Basel, <i>n</i>122 |
| Apply one's self, | | Bath..... | Bad, <i>n</i> 72 |
| to..... | sich befeßen..... 41 | Battalion..... | Bataillon, <i>n</i> 81 |
| Appointment... | Anstellung, <i>f</i>122 | Battle..... | Schlacht, <i>f</i> ..60, 124 |
| Apprehension... | Besorgniß, <i>f</i> 64 | Bavarian..... | Baier, <i>m</i> 74 |
| Apricot..... | Aprikose, <i>f</i>111 | Bay..... | Bai, Bucht, <i>f</i> 59 |
| Archbishop..... | Erzbischof, <i>m</i> 81 | Bay (horse).... | Braunen, <i>m</i>104 |
| Arm..... | Arm, <i>m</i> 70 | Be, to..... | sein.....111 |
| Arms (weapons). | Waffen.....114 | Be current, to.. | gelten..... 36 |
| Army..... | Heer, <i>n</i> 57 | Be frightened, to | erschrecken..... 36 |
| Army-corps..... | Armee-corps, <i>n</i> ... 81 | Be worth, to... | gelten..... 36 |
| Around..... | rings.....116 | Beak..... | Schnabel, <i>m</i> 71 |
| Arrange, to..... | zu besorgen.....124 | Bear..... | Bär, <i>m</i> 75 |
| Arrive, to..... | ankommen..... 55 | Bear, to..... | tragen.....44, 102 |
| "..... | anlangen.....131 | Beautiful..... | schön, <i>adj</i> 22 |
| Art..... | Kunst, <i>f</i>73, 76 | Beautiful, the.. | das Schöne, <i>n</i> ... 59 |
| As..... | als.....55, 126 | Beauty..... | Schönheit, <i>f</i> 79 |
| Ascend, to..... | besteigen.....111 | Become, to..... | werden..... 36 |
| Aside..... | bei Seite..... 37 | Bed..... | Bett, <i>n</i>78, 117 |
| Ask a question, | | Bedroom..... | Schlafzimmer, <i>n</i> ..116 |
| to..... | fragen.....30 | Beef..... | Rindfleisch, <i>n</i> 89 |
| Assert, to..... | behaupten.....113 | Beer..... | Bier, <i>n</i> 35 |
| Assistant..... | Gehülfe, <i>m</i> 89 | Before..... | vorn, vor...115, 123 |
| Astonishing..... | erstaunlich.....128 | Beg, to..... | bitten..... 39 |
| At..... | bei, zu, an.....121 | Beggar..... | Bettler, <i>m</i> 76 |
| Attain, to..... | erreichen.....100 | Begin, to..... | anfangen..... 55 |
| Austria..... | Oesterreich, <i>n</i> 84 | "..... | beginnen..... 35 |
| Author..... | Verfasser, <i>m</i> 52 | Behind..... | hinten.....115, 123 |
| Authorities..... | Obrigkeit.....106 | Belgium..... | Belgien, <i>n</i>122 |
| Avoid, to..... | meiden..... 42 | Belong, to..... | gehören..... 81 |
| Awake, to..... | erwachen.....130 | Beloved..... | geliebt..... 88 |
| Away..... | weg, fort...76, 115 | Below..... | unten.....115, 123 |
| Axe..... | Art, <i>f</i> 73 | Bench..... | Bank, <i>f</i>73, 78 |
| Bachelor (old)... | Hagestolz, <i>m</i> 75 | Bend, to..... | biegen..... 37 |
| Back..... | zurück..... 115 | Benefactor..... | Wohlthäter, <i>m</i> ..122 |
| Backward..... | rückwärts.....116 | Bequeath, to... | vermachen.....126 |
| Bake, to..... | backen..... 44 | Berlin..... | Berlin, <i>n</i> 82 |
| Ball (a party)... | Ball, <i>m</i> 44 | Beside..... | neben..... 98 |
| " (to play | | Betray, to..... | verrathen..... 98 |
| with)..... | Kugel, <i>f</i> . Ball, <i>m</i> . 62 | Better, like to | |
| | | drink..... | trinken lieber...115 |

| | PAGE | | PAGE | | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|---------|-----------------------|-----------------------------|--------|
| Between | zwischen | 126 | Break, to | zerbrechen | 102 |
| Beyond | über | 123 | Break out, to | ausbrechen | 35 |
| Beyond descrip-
tion | unbeschreiblich .. | 79 | Breakfast | Frühstück, <i>n.</i> ... | 40 |
| Bible | Bibel, <i>f.</i> | 62 | Breast | Brust, <i>f.</i> | 73 |
| Bid, to | bieten | 37 | Breathe, to | athmen | 31 |
| Bind, to | binden | 34 | Bride | Braut, <i>f.</i> | 73 |
| Bird | Vogel, <i>m.</i> ... | 39, 71 | Bridge | Brücke, <i>f.</i> | 124 |
| Birth | Geburt, <i>f.</i> | 65 | Bring, to | bringen | 45 |
| Bishop | Bischof, <i>m.</i> | 80 | Bring forth, to | gebären | 36 |
| Bismuth | Wismuth, <i>m.</i> ... | 59 | Briton | Britte, <i>m.</i> ... | 74, 77 |
| Bite, to | beißen | 41 | Broad | breit | 88 |
| Bitter | bitter | 89 | Brother | Bruder, <i>m.</i> | 69 |
| Bitterness | Bitterkeit, <i>f.</i> ... | 122 | Brother-in-law | Schwager, <i>m.</i> ... | 70 |
| Black | schwarz | 93 | Brow | Stirn, <i>f.</i> | 43 |
| Blackbird | Amsel, <i>f.</i> | 62 | Brown | braun | 89 |
| Blade (of grass) | Salm, <i>m.</i> | 70 | Brunswick | Braunschweig, <i>n.</i> ... | 92 |
| Blindly | blindlings | 117 | Build, to | bauen | 30 |
| Bliss | Seligkeit, <i>f.</i> ... | 57 | Building | Gebäude, <i>n.</i> ... | 76 |
| Blood | Blut, <i>n.</i> | 60 | Bundle | Bund, Bündel, <i>n.</i> ... | 63 |
| Blossom | Blüthe, <i>f.</i> | 79 | Burn, to | brennen | 45 |
| Blow | Schlag, <i>m.</i> | 57 | Burst, to | bersten | 35 |
| Blow, to | blasen | 43 | Business | Geschäft, <i>n.</i> ... | 122 |
| " | wehen | 119 | But | aber | 96 |
| Blunt | stumpf | 22 | Butter | Butter, <i>f.</i> | 63 |
| Board | Brett, <i>n.</i> | 72 | Buy, to | kaufen | 30 |
| Boat | Boot, <i>n.</i> | 125 | By | von, an | 89 |
| Body | Leib, <i>m.</i> | 71 | By-standers | Umstehenden | 89 |
| Boil, to, intrans. | sieden | 38 | By turns | nach der Reihe .. | 114 |
| Boldness | Kühnheit, <i>f.</i> ... | 79 | Cable | Tau, <i>n.</i> | 62 |
| Bombard, to | bombardiren, 25, 31 | | Cage, bird | Bauer, <i>n.</i> | 63 |
| Bonnet | Hut, <i>m.</i> | 90 | Calf | Kalb, <i>n.</i> | 72 |
| Book | Buch, <i>n.</i> ... 16, 35, 72 | | Call | Ruf, <i>m.</i> | 57 |
| Book-keeper | Buchhalter, <i>m.</i> ... | 125 | Call, to | rufen | 43 |
| Boot | Stiefel, <i>m.</i> | 78 | " (name) | nennen | 46 |
| Booty | Beute, <i>f.</i> | 124 | " (out) | zusammen beru-
fen | 125 |
| Born, to be | geboren sein | 111 | Call upon, to | besuchen | 16 |
| Bottle | Flasche, <i>f.</i> | 35 | Called, to be | heißen | 43 |
| Bottle, to | abziehen | 38 | Candle | Licht, <i>n.</i> | 78 |
| Bottom | Boden, <i>m.</i> | 70 | Cap | Mütze, <i>f.</i> | 39 |
| Boy | Knabe, <i>m.</i> ... 35, 69 | | Capital | Hauptstadt, <i>f.</i> ... | 84 |
| Braid, to | flechten | 37, 39 | Carefully | sorgfältig | 119 |
| Branch | Zweig, <i>m.</i> | 124 | Carriage | Wagen, <i>m.</i> | 16 |
| Brass | Messing, <i>n.</i> | 64 | Carry, to | führen, tragen ... | 44 |
| Bravely, brave | tapfer wader | 39, 86 | Carry on, to | führen | 122 |
| Bread | Brod, <i>n.</i> | 60 | Cart-load | Fuder, <i>n.</i> | 63 |
| Break, to | brechen | 35, 130 | | | |

| | PAGE | | PAGE | | |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|-----|-------------------|------------------------------|---------|
| Case (box)..... | Riste, <i>f</i> | 109 | Cloak..... | Mantel, <i>m</i> | 71 |
| Cask..... | Faß, <i>n</i> | 72 | Clock..... | Uhr, <i>f</i> | 45 |
| Cassino (a game
at cards)..... | Rasino, <i>n</i> | 80 | Cloister..... | Kloster, <i>n</i> | 71 |
| Castle..... | Schloß, <i>n</i> | 61 | Close, to..... | schließen..... | 79 |
| "..... | Burg, <i>f</i> | 77 | Cloth..... | Tuch, <i>n</i> | 73 |
| Catch, to..... | fangen..... | 43 | Cloud..... | Wolke, <i>f</i> | 123 |
| Catch cold, to... | sich erkälten..... | 107 | Clouds..... | Wolken, <i>n</i> | 57 |
| Cattle..... | Vieh, <i>n</i> | 43 | Coat..... | Rock, <i>m</i> | 44 |
| Cause, to..... | lassen..... | 43 | Coat-of-arms... | Wappen, <i>n</i> | 63 |
| Cautious..... | vorsichtig..... | 31 | Cobalt..... | Kobalt, <i>m</i> | 59 |
| Cavalry..... | Cavalerie, <i>f</i> | 128 | Coffee..... | Kaffee, <i>m</i> | 109 |
| Cease, to..... | aufhören..... | 53 | Coin..... | Münze, <i>f</i> | 37 |
| Cedar..... | Edel, <i>f</i> | 63 | Cold..... | kalt, <i>adj</i> | 22 |
| Celebrated..... | berühmt..... | 83 | Collect, to..... | sammeln..... | 81 |
| Cellar..... | Keller, <i>m</i> | 121 | Colour..... | Farbe, <i>f</i> | 93 |
| Centre..... | Mittelpunkt, <i>m</i> | 83 | Colt..... | Füllen, <i>n</i> | 63 |
| Certificate..... | Zeugniß, <i>n</i> | 125 | Come, to..... | kommen..... | 36 |
| Chair..... | Stuhl, <i>m</i> | 123 | Comedy..... | Lustspiel, <i>n</i> | 117 |
| Chamber..... | Kammer, <i>f</i> | 63 | Comet..... | Komet, <i>m</i> | 80 |
| Change, to..... | umtauschen..... | 96 | Command, to... | befehlen..... | 35 |
| Chapter..... | Kapitel, <i>n</i> | 81 | Commander.... | Befehlshaber, <i>m</i> | 83 |
| Charitable..... | wohlthätig..... | 88 | Commercial | | |
| Charity..... | Almosen, <i>n</i> | 76 | house..... | Handelshaus, <i>n</i> | 82 |
| Charles | Karl, <i>m</i> | 82 | Commit, to..... | begehen..... | 104 |
| Charming..... | reizend..... | 84 | Commonly..... | gewöhnlich..... | 102 |
| Chase..... | Jagd, <i>f</i> | 60 | Companion..... | Gefährte, <i>m</i> | 74 |
| Cheerful..... | heiter..... | 125 | Company..... | Gesellschaft, <i>f</i> ... | 55 |
| Cheese..... | Käse, <i>m</i> | 64 | Compartment... | Fach, <i>n</i> | 72 |
| Cherry..... | Kirsche, <i>f</i> | 88 | Compose, to... | componiren..... | 25, 122 |
| Chestnut tree... | Kastanienbaum, <i>m</i> ... | 93 | Condition..... | Zustand, <i>m</i> | 65 |
| Chide, to..... | schelten..... | 36 | Conduct..... | Betragen, <i>n</i> | 54 |
| Chief..... | Chef, <i>m</i> | 80 | Conduct, to... | führen..... | 52 |
| Child..... | Kind, <i>n</i> | 72 | Conduct one's | | |
| Chin..... | Kinn, <i>n</i> | 61 | self, to..... | sich betragen..... | 119 |
| Choice..... | Wahl, <i>f</i> | 93 | Confidence..... | Vertrauen, <i>n</i> | 81 |
| Christ, of..... | Christi, <i>m</i> | 81 | Conscience..... | Gewissen, <i>n</i> | 131 |
| Christian..... | Christ, <i>m</i> | 75 | Considerable... | bedeutend..... | 125 |
| Church..... | Kirche, <i>f</i> | 30 | Consist of, to... | bestehen aus.... | 81 |
| Circumstance... | Umstand, <i>m</i> | 65 | Console, to..... | trösten..... | 30 |
| City..... | Stadt, <i>f</i> | 93 | Consonant..... | Konsonant, <i>m</i> ... | 80 |
| Clean..... | rein..... | 86 | Constantly..... | Stets..... | 116 |
| Clean, to..... | reinigen..... | 76 | Consul..... | Konsul, <i>m</i> | 80 |
| Clergyman..... | Pfarrer, <i>m</i> | 76 | Contain, to..... | enthalten..... | 81 |
| Clever..... | klug..... | 91 | Contend, to..... | streiten..... | 41 |
| Climb, to..... | ersteigen..... | 89 | Continent..... | Continent, <i>m</i> ... | 122 |
| "..... | klimmen..... | 38 | Continue, to... | anhalten..... | 131 |
| | | | Contradict, to... | widersprechen... | 48 |

| | PAGE | | PAGE | | |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|--------|-------------------|----------------------------------|---------|
| Contrary to..... | gegenüber..... | 125 | Darkness..... | Finsterniß, <i>f.</i> | 64 |
| Convince, to.... | überzeugen..... | 95 | Date..... | Dattel, <i>f.</i> | 62 |
| Cook..... | Köchin, <i>f.</i> | 44 | Daughter..... | Tochter, <i>f.</i> | 71 |
| Copper..... | Kupfer, <i>n.</i> | 63 | Day..... | Tag, <i>m.</i> | 70, 128 |
| Copy..... | Abſchrift, <i>f.</i> | 125 | Dear..... | lieb..... | 87 |
| Cord..... | Sehnur, <i>f.</i> | 60 | Debt..... | Schuld, <i>f.</i> | 60 |
| Corn..... | Korn, <i>n.</i> | 61 | Deceive, to.... | betrügen..... | 38 |
| Correct, Cor-
rectly..... | richtig..... | 100 | Decisive..... | entscheidend..... | 90 |
| Couch..... | Lager, <i>n.</i> | 63 | Deed..... | That, <i>f.</i> | 60 |
| Count..... | Graf, <i>m.</i> | 75 | Deep..... | tief..... | 19 |
| Count, to..... | rechnen..... | 30 | Degenerate, to.. | mißarten..... | 53 |
| Countess..... | Gräfin, <i>f.</i> | 77 | Delay, to..... | aufschieben..... | 105 |
| Counting-house | Comptoir, <i>n.</i> | 128 | Deliver, to..... | abliefern..... | 54 |
| Country..... | Land, <i>n.</i> | 19, 72 | Demand, to..... | fordern..... | 99 |
| Country-house.. | Landhäuschen, <i>n.</i> | 125 | Depart, to..... | abreisen..... | 54 |
| Country-life.... | Landleben, <i>n.</i> | 75 | Departure..... | Abreise, <i>f.</i> | 124 |
| Countrymen.... | Landleute..... | 78 | Desire..... | Luſt, <i>f.</i> | 74 |
| Country-people. | Landleute..... | 78 | Despair of, to... | verzweifeln an.... | 81 |
| Courier..... | Courier, <i>m.</i> | 46 | Destroy, to..... | zerſtören..... | 54 |
| Cousin, male... | Wetter, <i>m.</i> | 78 | Destroyer..... | Zerſtörer, <i>m.</i> | 131 |
| Cow..... | Ruh, <i>f.</i> | 73 | Detain, to..... | aufhalten..... | 43 |
| Create, to..... | ſchaffen..... | 44 | Diamond..... | Diamant, <i>m.</i> | 80 |
| Creep, to..... | kriechen..... | 38 | Die, to..... | ſterben..... | 36 |
| Crime..... | Verbrechen, <i>n.</i> ... | 104 | Dig, to..... | graben..... | 44 |
| Criminal..... | Verbrecher, <i>m.</i> ... | 124 | Dignitary..... | Geiſtliche, <i>m.</i> | 81 |
| Cross..... | Kreuz, <i>n.</i> | 61 | Diligent..... | ſleißig..... | 119 |
| Cruel..... | grausam..... | 118 | Dine, to..... | zu Mittag eſſen,
ſpeiſen..... | 121 |
| Cunning..... | Liſt, <i>f.</i> | 60 | Dining-room.... | Geiſſeſaal, <i>m.</i> ... | 116 |
| Cup..... | Taſſe, <i>f.</i> | 35 | Dinner..... | Mittagſeſſen, <i>n.</i> ... | 40 |
| Curious (rare).. | ſelten..... | 86 | Directly..... | ſogleich..... | 122 |
| Cushion..... | Kiſſen, <i>n.</i> | 63 | Disapprove, to.. | mißbilligen..... | 53 |
| Custom..... | Gebrauch, <i>m.</i> | 113 | Discover, to..... | entdecken..... | 54 |
| Cut, to..... | ſchneiden..... | 41, 97 | Disease..... | Krankheit, <i>f.</i> | 41 |
| Cut down, to... | umhauen..... | 102 | Disgrace..... | Schmach, <i>f.</i> | 60 |
| Dagger..... | Dolch, <i>m.</i> | 70 | Dish..... | Schüſſel, <i>f.</i> | 62 |
| Damage..... | Schaden, <i>m.</i> | 70 | Displease, to... | mißfallen..... | 53 |
| Damnation..... | Verdammniß, <i>f.</i> ... | 64 | Disregard, to... | mißachten..... | 53 |
| Dance, s..... | Tanz, <i>m.</i> | 122 | Distinctly..... | deutlich..... | 119 |
| Dance, to..... | tanzen..... | 48 | Distress..... | Beträngniß, <i>f.</i> ... | 64 |
| Dane..... | Däne, <i>m.</i> | 74 | Ditch..... | Graben, <i>m.</i> | 70 |
| Danger..... | Gefahr, <i>f.</i> | 119 | Divide, to..... | vertheilen..... | 124 |
| Dangerously.... | gefährlich..... | 115 | Do, to..... | thun..... | 46, 117 |
| Darius..... | Darios, <i>m.</i> | 84 | Dog..... | Hund, <i>m.</i> | 39, 70 |
| Dark..... | dunkel..... | 55 | Dominican..... | Dominiſaner, <i>m.</i> ... | 81 |
| Darkness..... | Dunkelheit, <i>f.</i> ... | 125 | Door..... | Thür, <i>f.</i> | 55 |
| | | | Dozen..... | Duſend, <i>n.</i> | 111 |

| | PAGE | | PAGE | | |
|-------------------|---------------------------|--------|--|--------------------|-----|
| Dragon | Drache, <i>m</i> | 64 | End (purpose).. Zweck, <i>m</i> | 122 | |
| Dress | Kleidung, <i>f</i> | 75 | Endure, to..... zu ertragen..... | 131 | |
| Dress one's self, | | | England..... England, <i>n</i> | 83 | |
| to | sich anziehen, 38, 97 | | English, <i>adj</i> englisch..... | 81 | |
| Dress one's self, | | | " <i>s</i> Englische, <i>n</i> | 106 | |
| to..... | sich ankleiden, 55, 97 | | Englishman.... Engländer, <i>m</i> ... | 100 | |
| Drink, to..... | trinken..... | 35 | Englishwoman.. Engländerin, <i>f</i> .. | 106 | |
| " (said | | | Enjoy, to..... genießen..... | 37 | |
| of beasts)..... | saufen..... | 38 | Enjoyment..... Genuß, <i>m</i> | 65 | |
| Drip, to..... | triefen..... | 38 | Entertain, to... unterhalten..... | 54 | |
| Drive, to (any- | | | Environs..... Umgegend, <i>f</i> | 55 | |
| thing)..... | treiben..... | 42 | Err, to..... irren..... | 97 | |
| Drive, to (in a | | | Error..... Irrthum, <i>m</i> | 73 | |
| carriage, &c.) | fahren..... | 44 | Escape, to..... entkommen..... | 31 | |
| Drought..... | Trockniß, <i>f</i> | 64 | "..... entspringen..... | 49 | |
| Drum..... | Trommel, <i>f</i> | 62 | Estate..... Gut, <i>n</i> | 72 | |
| Dry..... | trocken..... | 88 | "..... Landgut, <i>n</i> | 30 | |
| Ducat..... | Dukat, <i>m</i> | 80 | "..... Besizung..... | 79 | |
| Duchy..... | Herzogthum, <i>n</i> ... | 92 | Esteem..... Achtung, <i>f</i> | 81 | |
| During..... | während..... | 125 | Etna (Mount).. <i>n</i> etna..... | 93 | |
| Dust..... | Staub, <i>m</i> | 57 | Europe..... Europa, <i>n</i> | 93 | |
| Duty..... | Pflicht, <i>f</i> | 46 | Even..... eben, auch, sogar. | 119 | |
| Dwell, to..... | wohnen..... | 30 | Evening..... Abend, <i>m</i> | 104 | |
| | | | Ever..... je, jemals..... | 116 | |
| Each..... | jeder..... | 112 | Every..... alle..... | 98 | |
| Eagerness..... | Gier, <i>f</i> | 59 | "..... jeder..... | 102, 106 | |
| Ear..... | Ohr, <i>n</i> | 78 | Everybody..... Jedermann..... | 106 | |
| Early..... | früh...55, 116, 119 | | Everything..... Alles..... | 39, 97 | |
| Earn, to..... | verdienen..... | 31 | Everywhere.... überall..... | 116 | |
| Earth..... | Erde, <i>f</i> | 97 | Evil..... Uebel, <i>n</i> . Böse, <i>n</i> . | 42 | |
| Ease..... | Fertigkeit, <i>f</i> | 128 | Examine, to... nachsehen..... | 117 | |
| Easily..... | leicht..... | 107 | Example..... Beispiel, <i>n</i> | 93 | |
| Eat, to..... | essen..... | 39 | Exceedingly.... überaus..... | 119 | |
| " (beasts). | fressen..... | 39 | Excessive..... übermäßig..... | 131 | |
| Edge..... | Rand, <i>m</i> | 71 | Exchange..... Börse, <i>f</i> | 89 | |
| Edinburgh..... | Edinburg, <i>n</i> | 93 | Excuse, to..... entschuldigen.... | 54 | |
| Educate, to..... | erziehen..... | 128 | Exert one's self, | | |
| Education..... | Erziehung, <i>f</i> ... | 100 | to..... | sich bemühen.... | 119 |
| Edward..... | Edward, <i>m</i> | 92 | Exhaust, to..... erschöpfen..... | 120 | |
| Egg..... | Ei, <i>n</i> | 72, 76 | Expect, to..... erwarten..... | 77 | |
| Elephant..... | Elephant, <i>m</i> | 80 | Expel, to..... relegiren..... | 25, 81 | |
| Elizabeth..... | Elisabeth, <i>f</i> | 82 | Experiment..... Versuch, <i>m</i> | 115 | |
| Emigrate, to... | auswandern.... | 105 | Extensive..... ausgedehnt..... | 126 | |
| Eminent..... | ausgezeichnet...106 | | Extinguished, | | |
| Empire..... | Reich, <i>n</i> | 61 | to become.... | erlöschen..... | 38 |
| Enemy..... | Feind, <i>m</i> | 22, 31 | Extraordinarily | außerordentlich.. | 118 |
| End..... | Ende, <i>n</i> | 78 | Extravagantly.. | verschwenderisch.. | 107 |

| | PAGE | | PAGE |
|----------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------|----------------------------------|
| Extremely | äußerst.....119 | Finish, to | beendigen.....131 |
| Eye | Auge, <i>n</i> 78 | Fire | Feuer, <i>n</i> 63 |
| Eyelash | Wimper <i>f</i> 63 | Fist. | Faust, <i>f</i> 73 |
| Fable | Fabel, <i>f</i> 62 | Flax..... | Flachs, <i>m</i> 37 |
| Face..... | Gesicht, <i>n</i>73, 78 | Flee, to..... | fliehen.....31, 37 |
| Faculty..... | Fakultät, <i>f</i> 81 | Fleet..... | Flotte, <i>f</i> 77 |
| Fail, to | falliren.....25, 31 | Flesh | Fleisch, <i>n</i> 61 |
| Faith | Glaube, <i>m</i> 77 | Flight..... | Flucht, <i>f</i> 59 |
| Faithful..... | treu..... 88 | " to put to.. | in die Flucht |
| Faithfully..... | treulich.....117 | | schlagen..... 52 |
| Falcon | Falke, <i>m</i> 64 | Fling, to | schmeißen..... 41 |
| Fall | Fall, <i>m</i> 57 | Flood | Flut, <i>f</i> 59 |
| Fall, to..... | fallen..... 31 | Flour..... | Mehl, <i>n</i> 61 |
| Fall asleep, to.. | einschlafen..... 43 | Flow, to..... | fließen.....31, 37 |
| Fall ill, to..... | erkranken..... 31 | Flower | Blume, <i>f</i> 75 |
| Fall off, to..... | abfallen..... 75 | Flower-bed..... | Beet, <i>n</i> 60 |
| Family..... | Familie, <i>f</i> 89 | Fluency..... | Geldausigkeit, <i>f</i>128 |
| Far | weit.....119 | Fly, to | fliegen.....31, 37 |
| Fashions..... | Moden..... 89 | Fly away, to... | wegfliegen..... 37 |
| Fast..... | schnell..... 42 | Fodder..... | Futter, <i>n</i> 63 |
| Fat | Fett, <i>n</i> 61 | Foliage | Laub, <i>n</i> 61 |
| Father..... | Vater, <i>m</i> 70 | Follow, to..... | folgen..... 93 |
| Fault | Fehler, <i>m</i> 93 | Folly..... | Thorheit, <i>f</i> 58 |
| Favour | Gefallen, <i>m</i> 65 | Food | Kost, <i>f</i> 60 |
| " | Gunst, <i>f</i> 59 | Fool..... | Narr, <i>m</i> 75 |
| Fear..... | Furcht, <i>f</i> 59 | " | Thor, <i>m</i> 75 |
| Fear, to | fürchten.....102 | Foot..... | Fuß, <i>m</i> 69 |
| Feather | Feder, <i>f</i> 63 | Fop..... | Ges, <i>m</i> 75 |
| Feel, to..... | fühlen.....105 | For | für, nach, denn..122 |
| Ferment, to ... | gähren..... 37 | Force, to..... | zwingen..... 35 |
| Ferry over, to.. | übersetzen..... 54 | Forehead..... | Stirn, <i>f</i> 60 |
| Fester, to | schwären..... 38 | Forest..... | Forst, <i>m</i> 77 |
| Festival | Fest, <i>n</i> 61 | " | Wald, <i>m</i> 71 |
| Fetch, to | holen.....121 | Foretell, to | vorhersagen..... 55 |
| Fetter..... | Fessel, <i>f</i> 62 | Forge, to | schmieden..... 30 |
| Fever..... | Fieber, <i>n</i> 63 | Forget, to | vergessen..... 40 |
| Few | wenig..... 92 | Fork | Gabel, <i>f</i>16, 76 |
| Field..... | Acker, <i>m</i> 70 | Form | Form, <i>f</i> 59 |
| " | Feld, <i>n</i> 72 | Form, to..... | bilden..... 83 |
| Fight, to..... | fechten..... 37 | Formerly..... | sonst.....116 |
| Fig-tree | Feigenbaum, <i>m</i> ..102 | Forsake, to..... | verlassen..... 97 |
| Finch..... | Fink, <i>m</i> 75 | Fortress..... | Festung, <i>f</i> 84 |
| Find, to..... | finden..... 34 | Forward..... | vorwärts.....116 |
| Fine..... | schön..... 87 | Fossil..... | Fossil, <i>n</i> 80 |
| Fine, <i>s</i> | Geldstrafe, <i>f</i>106 | Foundation | Grund, <i>m</i>101 |
| Finger | Finger, <i>m</i> 42 | Fowl..... | Huhn, <i>n</i> 72 |
| | | France..... | Frankreich, <i>n</i> 19 |

| | PAGE | | PAGE | | |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|---------|-----------------------|----------------------------|---------|
| Frankfort | Frankfurt, <i>n.</i> | 83 | Go in, to..... | hineingehen... | 43, 55 |
| Frederick | Friedrich, <i>m.</i> 82, | 110 | Go in a con- | | |
| Freedom..... | Freiheit, <i>f.</i> | 79 | veyance, to .. | fahren..... | 31 |
| Freeze, to..... | frieren..... | 37 | Go out, to..... | ausgehen..... | 43 |
| Freight | Fracht, <i>f.</i> | 59 | God | Gott..... | 45, 71 |
| French, <i>adj.</i> | französische..... | 79 | Goddess..... | Göttin, <i>f.</i> | 74 |
| " <i>s.</i> | französisch..... | 30 | Godfather..... | Gevatter, <i>m.</i> | 78 |
| Fresh..... | frisch..... | 100 | Gold, <i>s.</i> | Gold, <i>n.</i> | 61 |
| Friend | Freund, <i>m.</i> 22, | 30 | " <i>adj.</i> | golden..... | 122 |
| From | aus, von..... | 90 | Good | gut..... | 87, 92 |
| Fruit | Frucht, <i>f.</i> 73, | 102 | Goods..... | Waaren..... | 55 |
| " | Obst, <i>n.</i> | 61 | Goose..... | Gans, <i>f.</i> | 73 |
| Full | voll..... | 114 | Gooseberry..... | Stachelbeere, <i>f.</i> | 103 |
| Funds..... | Fonts, <i>m.</i> | 80 | Gospel..... | Evangelium, <i>n.</i> | 80 |
| Furnish, to..... | möbliren..... | 25, 119 | Gout..... | Gicht, <i>f.</i> | 59 |
| Gain | Gewinn, <i>m.</i> | 65 | Governess..... | Erzieherin, <i>f.</i> ... | 100 |
| Gain, to..... | erwerben ... | 81, 128 | Graciously..... | gnädig..... | 119 |
| Game..... | Wib, <i>n.</i> | 62 | Grain..... | Korn, <i>n.</i> | 72 |
| Ganges..... | Ganges, <i>m.</i> | 58 | Grammar..... | Grammatik, <i>f.</i> ... | 100 |
| Garden..... | Garten, <i>m.</i> | 70 | Grant, to..... | bewilligen..... | 125 |
| Gardener | Gärtner, <i>m.</i> | 42 | Grapes..... | Weintrauben, <i>f.</i> | 22 |
| Garden-wall.... | Gartenmauer, <i>f.</i> | 124 | Grass..... | Gras, <i>n.</i> | 72 |
| Garlands..... | Guirlanden..... | 52 | Grave..... | Gruf, <i>f.</i> | 73 |
| Garment..... | Gewand, <i>n.</i> | 73 | " | Grab, <i>n.</i> | 72 |
| " | Kleid, <i>n.</i> | 72 | Grease..... | Schmalz, <i>n.</i> | 61 |
| Garrison..... | Befagung, <i>f.</i> | 84 | Great..... | groß..... | 92 |
| Gate | Thor, <i>n.</i> | 70 | Greatness..... | Größe, <i>f.</i> | 58 |
| Geneva..... | Genf, <i>n.</i> | 103 | Greece..... | Griechenland, <i>n.</i> | 93 |
| Genius..... | Genie, <i>n.</i> | 80 | Green | grün..... | 79, 87 |
| Gentleman..... | Herr, <i>m.</i> | 90 | Grind | schleifen..... | 41 |
| Gently | leise..... | 118 | Grow, to..... | wachsen..... | 44 |
| German (lan- | | | " | werden..... | 22 |
| guage) | Deutsche, <i>n.</i> | 30 | Growth..... | Wachsthum, <i>m.</i> | |
| Germany..... | Deutschland, <i>n.</i> | 19 | | and <i>n.</i> | 65 |
| Get, to..... | bekommen..... | 75 | Guard..... | Wacht, <i>f.</i> | 60 |
| Girl..... | Mädchen, <i>n.</i> | 22 | Guard, to..... | bewachen, hüten. | 75 |
| Give, to..... | geben..... | 39 | Guess, to..... | errathen..... | 79, 117 |
| " | schenken..... | 76 | Guest..... | Gast, <i>m.</i> | 113 |
| Give up, to.... | aufgeben..... | 131 | Hague..... | Haag, <i>m.</i> | 59 |
| Gladly | gern..... | 48 | Hair | Haar, <i>n.</i> | 61 |
| Glass..... | Glas, <i>n.</i> | 35, 72 | Hammer..... | Hammer, <i>m.</i> | 70 |
| Glide, to..... | gleiten..... | 41 | Hand | Hand, <i>f.</i> | 35, 73 |
| Glimmer, to.... | glimmen..... | 38 | Handbook..... | Handbuch, <i>n.</i> | 65 |
| Glow | Gluth. <i>f.</i> | 59 | Handwriting... | Handschrift, <i>f.</i> ... | 103 |
| Go, to..... | gehen..... | 31, 43 | Hang, to..... | hängen..... | 43 |
| Go away, to.... | fortgehen..... | 43 | Hanover..... | Hannover, <i>n.</i> | 92 |

| | PAGE | | PAGE |
|--------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------|------------------------------|
| Happen, to..... | geschehen....39, 103 | Hope..... | Hoffnung, <i>f.</i>113 |
| Happy..... | glücklich120 | Horn..... | Horn, <i>n.</i> 72 |
| Harbour..... | Hafen, <i>m.</i>70, 76 | Horse..... | Pferd, <i>n.</i> 69 |
| Hardship..... | Beschwerde, <i>f.</i> ...131 | "..... | Reß, <i>n.</i> 61 |
| Hare..... | Hase, <i>m.</i> 64 | Hospital..... | Spital, <i>n.</i> 80 |
| Harz Moun- | | Host..... | Gast, <i>f.</i> 60 |
| tains..... | Harz, <i>m.</i> 83 | Hot..... | heiß..... 93 |
| Haste..... | Haust, <i>f.</i> 59 | Hour..... | Stunde, <i>f.</i>109 |
| Hat..... | Hut, <i>m.</i> 19 | House..... | Haus, <i>n.</i> 72 |
| Hatchet..... | Beil, <i>n.</i> 60 | Hover, to..... | schweben123 |
| Hate, to..... | hassen.....102 | How..... | wie35, 117 |
| Hay..... | Heu, <i>n.</i> 61 | Howling..... | Geheul, <i>n.</i> 57 |
| Head..... | Haupt, <i>n.</i> 72 | Human being.. | Mensch, <i>m.</i> 69 |
| "..... | Kopf, <i>m.</i> 39 | Hundredweight | Centner, <i>m.</i>111 |
| Health..... | Gesundheit, <i>f.</i> ... 99 | Hungarian..... | Ungar, <i>m.</i> 74 |
| Heap..... | Haufe, <i>m.</i> 77 | Husbands..... | Ehemänner, <i>m.</i> .. 79 |
| Hear, to..... | hören..... 30 | | |
| Heart..... | Herz, <i>n.</i> 77 | I..... | ich..... 94 |
| Heath..... | Heide, <i>f.</i> 65 | I am sorry..... | es thut mir leid.120 |
| Heathen..... | Heide, <i>m.</i> 65 | Ice..... | Eis, <i>n.</i> 36 |
| Hedge..... | Hecke, <i>f.</i> 75 | If..... | wenn 16 |
| Heifer..... | Rind, <i>n.</i> 61 | Ill..... | krank 19 |
| Heir..... | Erbe, <i>m.</i> 65 | Illness..... | Krankheit, <i>f.</i> ...125 |
| Helm..... | Steuer, <i>n.</i> 64 | Immediately.... | sofort..... 40 |
| Help, to..... | helfen 36 | Impatient..... | ungebuldig 22 |
| Herb..... | Kraut, <i>n.</i> 72 | Impending..... | bevorstehend.....125 |
| Herdsmen..... | Hirt, <i>m.</i>43, 75 | Implicit..... | unbedingt.....120 |
| Here..... | hier115 | Important..... | wichtig.....102 |
| Hero..... | Held, <i>m.</i> 75 | Impossible..... | unmöglich.....107 |
| Heroine..... | Heldin, <i>f.</i> 74 | Impostor..... | Betrüger, <i>m.</i> ...107 |
| Hew, to..... | hauen 43 | Improbable..... | unwahrscheinlich 120 |
| Hide, to..... | bergen 35 | Improve, to.... | sich bessern.....117 |
| High..... | hoch89, 92 | In..... | in, auf, herein— |
| Hill..... | Hügel, <i>m.</i>123 | | 19, 101, 116 |
| Him..... | ihn.....30, 94 | In spite of..... | trotz.....124 |
| History..... | Geschichte, <i>f.</i> ...105 | Inch..... | Zoll, <i>m.</i> 78 |
| Hit, to..... | treffen..... 36 | Increase, to.... | zunehmen..... 76 |
| Hither..... | her.....115, 116 | Indeed..... | freilich120 |
| Hitherto..... | bisher.....116 | Indescribable.. | unbeschreiblich.... 79 |
| Hold, to..... | halten..... 43 | Individual..... | Individuum, <i>n.</i> 80 |
| Hold under, to.. | un'terhalten..... 54 | Induce, to..... | bewegen 37 |
| Hole..... | Loch, <i>n.</i> 72 | Industriously.... | fleißig.....120 |
| Holiday..... | Feiertag, <i>m.</i> 79 | Inestimable..... | unschätzbar..... 79 |
| Home..... | nach Haus..... 44 | Inexcusable..... | unverzeßlich....102 |
| Home, at..... | zu Hause..... 19 | Infantry..... | Infanterie, <i>f.</i> ...128 |
| Honest, <i>adj.</i> | ehrlich 44 | Influence..... | Einfluß, <i>m.</i>122 |
| Hoof..... | Huf, <i>m.</i> 70 | Inform, to..... | benachrichtigen...119 |

| | PAGE | | PAGE | | |
|------------------------|----------------------------|---------|-------------------|---------------------------|----------|
| Inhabit, to..... | bewohnen..... | 77 | Kingdom..... | Königreich, <i>n</i> | 81 |
| Inhabitant..... | Einwohner, <i>m</i> | 81, 99 | Knee..... | Knie, <i>n</i> | 61 |
| Inheritance..... | Erbe, <i>n</i> | 65 | Knife..... | Messer, <i>n</i> | 16, 76 |
| Injury..... | Schade, <i>m</i> | 77 | Knock, to..... | klopfen..... | 104 |
| Ink..... | Tinte, <i>f</i> | 43 | Know, to..... | erkennen..... | 97 |
| Inkstand..... | Tintenfaß, <i>n</i> | 123 | "..... | fennen..... | 45 |
| Insect..... | Insekt, <i>n</i> | 80 | "..... | wissen..... | 46 |
| Insist, to..... | bestehen..... | 96 | Knowledge..... | Kenntniß, <i>f</i> | 105 |
| Instinct..... | Instinkt, <i>m</i> | 80 | Ladder..... | Leiter, <i>f</i> | 63 |
| Insurrection.... | Aufstand, <i>m</i> | 65 | Lady..... | Dame, <i>f</i> | 43 |
| Instruct, to.... | unterrichten..... | 100 | " (young)... | Fräulein, <i>n</i> | 35 |
| Integrity..... | Redlichkeit, <i>f</i> | 106 | Lake..... | See, <i>m</i> | 78 |
| Intellect..... | Verstand, <i>m</i> | 65 | Lamb..... | Lamm, <i>n</i> | 72 |
| Intensely..... | innig..... | 118 | Land..... | Land, <i>n</i> | 61 |
| Intention..... | Absicht, <i>f</i> | 117 | Land, to..... | landen..... | 31 |
| Interest..... | Interesse, <i>n</i> | 107 | Lard..... | Schmalz, <i>n</i> | 61 |
| Interpret, to... | erklären..... | 81 | Large..... | groß..... | 88 |
| Into..... | in..... | 90 | Last, to..... | dauern..... | 124 |
| Intolerable..... | unerträglich..... | 120 | Last night..... | vorige Nacht.... | 39 |
| Invitation..... | Einladung, <i>f</i> | 128 | Late..... | spät..... | 116, 119 |
| Invite, to..... | einladen.... | 90, 114 | Lately..... | neulich..... | 117 |
| Irresistibly..... | unwiderstehlich... | 99 | Laugh, to..... | lachen..... | 30 |
| Iron..... | Eisen, <i>n</i> | 30 | Laurel..... | Lorbeer, <i>m</i> | 78 |
| Iron, to..... | plätten..... | 79 | Law..... | Gesetz, <i>n</i> | 106 |
| Isaiah..... | Jesaias, <i>m</i> | 81 | Lead..... | Blei, <i>n</i> | 60 |
| Island..... | Insel, <i>f</i> | 77 | Lead the way, | | |
| Ivy..... | Ephen, <i>m</i> | 123 | to..... | vorangehen...43, 55 | |
| Jailer..... | Gefangenwärter, | | Leaf..... | Blatt, <i>n</i> | 72, 75 |
| | <i>m</i> | 49 | Lean, to..... | sich stützen..... | 131 |
| Jam..... | Mus, <i>n</i> | 61 | Leap..... | Sprung, <i>m</i> | 57 |
| January..... | Januar, <i>m</i> | 111 | Leap, to..... | übersetzen..... | 124 |
| Jaw..... | Kiefer, <i>m</i> | 65 | Leap over, to... | ü'bersetzen..... | 54 |
| John..... | Johann, <i>m</i> | 79 | Leap-year..... | Schaltjahr, <i>n</i> ... | 109 |
| Journey..... | Reise, <i>f</i> | 93 | Learn, to..... | lernen..... | 30 |
| Joy..... | Freude, <i>f</i> | 57 | Learned man... | Gelehrter, <i>m</i> | 89 |
| Judge..... | Richter, <i>m</i> | 124 | Leather..... | Leber, <i>n</i> | 63 |
| June..... | Juni, <i>m</i> | 111 | Leave, to..... | lassen..... | 43 |
| Just, <i>adv</i> | eben, <i>adv</i> | 55, 117 | Leave behind, | | |
| | | | to..... | hinterlassen..... | 107 |
| Kaffir..... | Kaffer, <i>m</i> | 74 | Left..... | links..... | 115 |
| Keep, to..... | halten..... | 43 | Leg..... | Bein, <i>n</i> | 60 |
| Key..... | Schlüssel, <i>m</i> | 40 | Leg of mutton.. | Hammelfeule, <i>f</i> . | 44 |
| Kill, to..... | töden..... | 31 | Lend, to..... | leihen..... | 42 |
| Kindly..... | freundlich..... | 118 | Lesson..... | Stunde..... | 40 |
| Kindness..... | Güte, <i>f</i> | 54 | Let, to (a house) | vermieten..... | 54 |
| King..... | König, <i>m</i> | 46 | Let alone. to... | lassen..... | 43 |

| | PAGE | | PAGE | | |
|------------------------------|---|---------|------------------|--------------------------|--------|
| Letter..... | Brief, <i>m</i> | 43 | Maas..... | Maas, <i>f</i> | 83 |
| " (of the
alphabet)..... | Buchſtabe, <i>m</i> | 77 | Magpie..... | Uſter, <i>f</i> | 63 |
| Letter-box..... | Briefkaſten, <i>m</i> | 17 | Maid-servant... | Magd, <i>f</i> | 74 |
| Liable..... | unterworfen..... | 114 | Main..... | Main, <i>m</i> | 83 |
| Librarian..... | Bibliothekar, <i>m</i> | 89 | Maintain, to... | unterhalten..... | 81 |
| Library..... | Bibliothek, <i>f</i> | 89 | Major..... | Major, <i>m</i> | 80 |
| Lie, to (tell a
lie)..... | lügen..... | 38 | Make, to..... | machen..... | 93 |
| Lie down, to... | liegen..... | 40 | Malt..... | Malz, <i>n</i> | 6 |
| Life..... | Leben, <i>n</i> | 77 | Man..... | Mann, <i>m</i> | 71 |
| Lift, to..... | heben..... | 38 | "..... | Menſch, <i>m</i> | 75 |
| Light..... | hell..... | 55 | Manage, to.... | verwalten..... | 89 |
| "..... | Sicht, <i>n</i> | 72, 81 | Manager..... | Vorſteher, <i>m</i> | 81 |
| Lighten, to.... | hellen..... | 131 | Mangle..... | Wangel, <i>f</i> | 62 |
| Lighthouse..... | Leuchthurm, <i>m</i> | 123 | Manner..... | Art, <i>f</i> | 59 |
| Like, to..... | gern haben, <i>v.a.</i>
and <i>n</i> | 88 | Manufacture, to | fabriciren..... | 25 |
| Limb..... | Glied, <i>n</i> | 72 | Manufacturer.. | Fabrikant, <i>m</i> | 122 |
| Limit..... | Ziel, <i>n</i> | 62 | Many..... | mancher..... | 112 |
| Line..... | Zeile, <i>f.n.pl.</i> | 55 | Many things .. | Vieles..... | 124 |
| Lion..... | Löwe, <i>m</i> | 103 | Married people. | Eheleute..... | 78 |
| Listen to, to... | anhören..... | 107 | Marrow .. | Mark, <i>n</i> | 61 |
| Little..... | klein..... | 88 | Marry, to..... | heirathen..... | 84 |
| "..... | wenig, <i>adv</i> | 120 | Mary..... | Marie, <i>f</i> | 93 |
| Live, to..... | leben..... | 107 | Mast (of a ſhip) | Maſt, <i>m</i> | 78 |
| " (dwell)..... | wohnen..... | 102 | Master..... | Herr, <i>m</i> | 75 |
| Liver..... | Leber, <i>f</i> | 63 | Material..... | Material, <i>n</i> | 80 |
| Load..... | Last, <i>f</i> | 60 | "..... | Stoff, <i>m</i> | 70 |
| Load, to..... | laden..... | 44 | May..... | Mai, <i>m</i> | 111 |
| Lock..... | Schloß, <i>n</i> | 73 | Mayence..... | Mainz, <i>n</i> | 83 |
| Lodgers..... | Miethsleute..... | 78 | Me..... | ich, <i>mir</i> | 94 |
| " (male)..... | Miethsmänner.. | 79 | Meal..... | Mahl, <i>n</i> | 61 |
| Long..... | lange..... | 30, 117 | Mean, to..... | meinen..... | 104 |
| Look..... | Blick, <i>m</i> | 57 | Means..... | Mittel, <i>n</i> | 63 |
| Look, to..... | ſehen..... | 40 | Meantime..... | unterdeſſen..... | 117 |
| Look on, to.... | ausſehen..... | 131 | Measure..... | Maß, <i>n</i> | 61 |
| Looking-glass.. | Spiegel, <i>m</i> | 102 | Measure, to.... | messen..... | 40 |
| Lop, to..... | beſchneiden..... | 75 | Meat..... | Fleiſch, <i>n</i> | 40 |
| Lord..... | Herr, <i>m</i> | 80 | Medicine..... | Medicin, <i>f</i> | 31 |
| Lose, to..... | verlieren..... | 38 | Meditate..... | ſinnen..... | 36 |
| Lot..... | Loos, <i>n</i> | 61 | Meet, to..... | begegnen..... | 31 |
| Loud, loudly .. | laut..... | 118 | "..... | treffen..... | 37 |
| Louse..... | Laus, <i>f</i> | 73 | Meeting..... | Conferenz, <i>f</i> | 81 |
| Love, to..... | lieben..... | 30 | Melt, to..... | ſchmelzen..... | 38 |
| Luck..... | Glück, <i>n</i> | 61 | Men..... | Menſchen..... | 114 |
| Lucrative..... | einträglich..... | 131 | " (honest)... | Biedermänner.. | 78 |
| | | | " of honour.. | Ehrenmänner.. | 78 |
| | | | Merchant..... | Kaufmann, <i>m</i> ... | 31 |
| | | | Merchants..... | Kaufleute..... | 78, 90 |

| | PAGE | | PAGE | | |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|--------|-------------------------|--------------------------------|------------|
| Messenger..... | Bote, <i>m</i> | 46 | Move, to..... | rücken..... | 123 |
| Messrs..... | die Herren..... | 126 | Moved..... | gerührt..... | 127 |
| Might..... | Macht, <i>f</i> | 60 | Mr..... | Herr..... | 35 |
| Mile..... | Meile, <i>f</i> | 112 | Much..... | viel..... | 37, 92 |
| Militia..... | Landwehr, <i>f</i> | 125 | Munich..... | München, <i>n</i> | 121 |
| Milk..... | Milch, <i>f</i> | 35 | Murmur, to..... | murren..... | 131 |
| Milk, to..... | melken..... | 38 | Music..... | Musik, <i>f</i> | 36 |
| Milt..... | Milch, <i>f</i> | 60 | My..... | mein..... | 97, 98 |
| Mind..... | Gemüth, <i>n</i> | 73 | Nail..... | Nagel, <i>m</i> | 71 |
| Mine, <i>pron.</i> my..... | mein..... | 98 | Name..... | Name, <i>m</i> | 77 |
| Miners..... | Bergleute..... | 78 | " (Christian)..... | Vorname, <i>m</i> | 46 |
| Minster..... | Münster, <i>m</i> | 89 | Name, to..... | nennen..... | 45 |
| Miscarry, to..... | mißlingen..... | 53 | Named, to be..... | heißen..... | 43 |
| Miserably..... | elend..... | 118 | Nation..... | Volk, <i>n</i> | 57 |
| Misfortune..... | Unglück, <i>n</i> | 113 | Nature..... | Natur, <i>f</i> | 65 |
| Mislay..... | verlegen..... | 100 | Navigable..... | schiffbar..... | 100 |
| Miss..... | Fräulein..... | 35 | Nay..... | nein..... | 120 |
| Mississippi..... | Mississippi, <i>m</i> | 58 | Near..... | naß..... | 92 |
| Mistake..... | Fehler, <i>m</i> | 93 | Nearly..... | beinahe..... | 119 |
| "..... | Irthum, <i>m</i> | 65 | Neat, <i>noun</i> | Rind, <i>n</i> | 72 |
| Mistress..... | Frau, <i>f</i> | 106 | Necker..... | Nedar, <i>m</i> | 83 |
| Misunderstand, | | | Need..... | Noth, <i>f</i> | 74 |
| to..... | mißverstehen..... | 120 | Needle..... | Nadel, <i>f</i> | 69 |
| Mock at, to..... | spotten..... | 96 | Negligence..... | Nachlässigkeit, <i>f</i> | 120 |
| Modest..... | bescheiden..... | 89 | Neighbour..... | Nachbar, <i>m</i> | 78 |
| Moment..... | Augenblick, <i>m</i> | 90 | "..... | Nächste, <i>m</i> | 107 |
| Money..... | Geld, <i>n</i> | 16, 72 | Nephew..... | Neffe, <i>m</i> | 76 |
| Monk..... | Mönch, <i>m</i> | 81 | Nerve..... | Nerv, <i>m</i> | 75 |
| Monkey..... | Affe, <i>m</i> | 64 | Nest..... | Nest, <i>n</i> | 72 |
| Monument..... | Monument, <i>n</i> | 80 | Net..... | Netz, <i>n</i> | 61 |
| Moon..... | Mond, <i>m</i> | 43 | Never..... | nie..... | 116 |
| Moor..... | Moor(e), <i>m</i> | 74 | "..... | nie-mals..... | 116 |
| More..... | mehr..... | 31 | "..... | nimmer..... | 116 |
| Morning..... | Morgen, <i>m</i> | 55 | New..... | neu..... | 75 |
| Mortal..... | Sterblicher, <i>m</i> | 89 | News..... | Nachricht, <i>f</i> | 90 |
| Moselle..... | Mosel, <i>f</i> | 104 | Newspaper..... | Zeitung, <i>f</i> | 76 |
| Moss..... | Moos, <i>n</i> | 61 | Niece..... | Nichte, <i>f</i> | 122 |
| Most..... | höchst..... | 119 | Night..... | Nacht, <i>f</i> | 74 |
| Mother..... | Mutter, <i>f</i> | 71 | No (negative)..... | nein..... | 120 |
| Mount, to..... | steigen..... | 42 | Noble..... | edel..... | 89 |
| Mountain..... | Berg, <i>m</i> | 19 | Noblemen..... | Edelleute..... | 78 |
| Mountains..... | Gebirge, <i>n</i> | 57 | Nobody..... | Niemand..... | 107 |
| Mourning..... | Trauer, <i>f</i> | 117 | None, no..... | kein..... | 16, 90 112 |
| Mouse..... | Maus, <i>f</i> | 74 | Noon..... | Mittag, <i>m</i> | 122 |
| Mouth..... | Mund, <i>m</i> | 79 | Norwegian..... | Norweger, <i>m</i> | 77 |
| " (of beasts)..... | Maul, <i>n</i> | 72 | Not..... | nicht..... | 19 |
| Move, to..... | ziehen..... | 31 | | | |

| | PAGE | | PAGE | | |
|--|---------------------------|---|-------------------------------|-------------------------|-----|
| Not anywhere... nirgend..... | 116 | Ore | Erz, <i>n.</i> 60 | | |
| Nothing..... nichts | 107 | Organ | Orgel, <i>f.</i> 62 | | |
| Now..... jetzt | 116 | Original..... | Original, <i>n.</i>125 | | |
| " | nun.....116 | Ostrich | Strauß, <i>m.</i> 78 | | |
| Nowhere..... nirgend..... | 116 | Others | andern.....120 | | |
| Number of 15.. Wandel, <i>n.</i> | 66 | Otherwise..... | anders.....46, 117 | | |
| " of 60.. Schock, <i>n.</i> | 62 | Ounce | Unze, <i>f.</i>109 | | |
| Numerous..... zahlreich..... | 89 | Our..... | unser..... 98 | | |
| Nut..... Nuß, <i>f.</i> | 74 | Out of..... | aus | 121 | |
| Oar..... Ruder, <i>n.</i> | 63 | Over | über | 123 | |
| Obedience..... Gehorsam, <i>m.</i> | 120 | Owner | Eigenthümer, <i>m.</i> | 90 | |
| Obedient, -ly... gehorsam..... | 93 | Ox | Ochse, <i>m.</i> | 75 | |
| Obey, to..... gehorchen..... | 48 | Oyster..... | Muster, <i>f.</i> | 77 | |
| Object..... Gegenstand, <i>m.</i> | 65 | Page | Seite, <i>f.</i> | 55 | |
| " | Zweck, <i>m.</i>100 | Pain..... | Schmerz, <i>m.</i> | 78 | |
| Obligation..... Verbindlichkeit, <i>f.</i> | 122 | Paint, to..... | malen..... | 52 | |
| Obliged, to be.. müssen..... | 47 | Pair | Paar, <i>n.</i> | 76 | |
| Observe, to..... beobachten..... | 114 | Palace..... | Palast, <i>m.</i> | 75 | |
| Obtain, to..... erhalten..... | 122 | Pap..... | Muß, <i>n.</i> | 61 | |
| Occupy, to..... besetzen..... | 79 | Paper..... | Papier, <i>n.</i> | 16 | |
| Of..... auf..... | 130 | Parable..... | Parabel, <i>f.</i> | 62 | |
| " | von | Paradise..... | Paradies, <i>n.</i> | 89 | |
| Of it..... davon..... | 95, 96, 103 | Parasol..... | Sonnenschirm, <i>m.</i> | 89 | |
| Office..... Amt, <i>n.</i> | 72 | Parcel..... | Paket, <i>n.</i> | 39 | |
| Officer..... Offizier, <i>m.</i> | 81 | Parents..... | Eltern, <i>m.</i> | 30 | |
| Often..... oft..... | 117 | Park | Park, <i>m.</i> | 45 | |
| Oil..... Del, <i>n.</i> | 61 | Part (in a play) Rolle, <i>f.</i> | 106 | | |
| Old..... alt | 86 | " (of a whole) Theil, <i>m.</i> | 66 | | |
| On..... an..... | 123 | Part, to..... | scheiden..... | 42 | |
| " | auf.....93, 123 | Particulars..... | Detail, <i>n.</i> | 80 | |
| On leave..... auf Urlaub, <i>m.</i> | 81 | Party | Gesellschaft, <i>f.</i> | 55, 128 | |
| Once..... einst..... | 116 | Pass, to | passiren..... | 25 | |
| One (French <i>on</i>) man..... | 107 | Pass for, to | gelten..... | 36 | |
| One another... einander..... | 97 | Past | vorüber..... | 79 | |
| Onion..... Zwiebel, <i>f.</i> | 62 | Pasture..... | Weide, <i>f.</i> | 43 | |
| Only..... nur..... | 119 | Path | Bahn, <i>f.</i> | 59 | |
| Open, to..... aufmachen..... | 55 | " | Pfad, <i>m.</i> | 70 | |
| Opportunity... Gelegenheit, <i>f.</i> | 93 | Patience | Geduld, <i>f.</i> | 16 | |
| Opposite..... gegenüber..... | 125 | Pattern..... | Muster, <i>n.</i> | 63 | |
| Oracle..... Orakel, <i>n.</i> | 63 | Paul..... | Paulus, <i>m.</i> | 82 | |
| Orally..... mündlich..... | 117 | Pay, to | bezahlen...106, 126 | | |
| Orange..... Orselsine, <i>f.</i> | 96 | Pay a visit, to.. einen Besuch | | | |
| Orator..... Redner, <i>m.</i> | 93 | | machen..... | 48 | |
| Order, to | bestellen..... | 76 | Peace..... | Friede, <i>m.</i> | 77 |
| Order (of | | | Pear..... | Birne, <i>f.</i> | 109 |
| monks)..... Orden, <i>m.</i> | 81 | | | | |

| | PAGE | | PAGE |
|--------------------|-----------------------------|--------|---------------------------|
| Peasant | Bauer, <i>m.</i> | 77 | Pole (of a car- |
| Peculiar | eigenthümlich | 113 | riage)..... |
| Pen | Feder, <i>f.</i> | 37 | Deichsel, <i>f.</i> |
| Penknife | Federmesser, <i>n.</i> ... | 104 | 62 |
| Pension | Gnabengehalt, <i>n.</i> ... | 125 | Poor..... |
| " | Pension, <i>f.</i> | 125 | arm |
| People | Leute | 93 | 22 |
| " | Volk, <i>n.</i> | 73 | Poor, <i>s. plur.</i> ... |
| Pepper | Pfeffer, <i>m.</i> | 109 | Armen, <i>m.</i> |
| Perform, to | erfüllen | 54 | 37 |
| Perhaps | vielleicht, etwa | 120 | Pope |
| Permission | Erlaubniß, <i>f.</i> | 40 | Papst, <i>m.</i> |
| Persia | Persien, <i>n.</i> | 84 | 80 |
| Person | Person, <i>f.</i> | 93 | Poplar |
| " (male) .. | Mannsperson, <i>f.</i> | 58 | Pappel, <i>f.</i> |
| Physician | Arzt, <i>m.</i> | 128 | 62 |
| Picture | Bild, <i>n.</i> | 72 | Population |
| Piece | Stück, <i>n.</i> | 40 | Bevölkerung, <i>f.</i> |
| Pieces, into | entzwei | 42 | 84 |
| Pig | Schwein, <i>n.</i> | 62 | Portion |
| Pinchbeck | Tomback, <i>m.</i> | 59 | Theil, <i>n.</i> |
| Pine | Kiefer, <i>f.</i> | 65 | 80 |
| Pink (flower) .. | Neise, <i>f.</i> | 102 | Portrait |
| Pitch | Bech, <i>n.</i> | 61 | Porträt, <i>n.</i> |
| Place | Ort, <i>m.</i> | 71, 78 | 60 |
| Place, to | stellen | 123 | Post |
| Plan | Plan, <i>m.</i> | 54 | Post, <i>f.</i> |
| Planet | Planet, <i>m.</i> | 80 | 60 |
| Plant, to | bepflanzen | 75 | Post-horse |
| Plaster | Plaster, <i>n.</i> | 63 | Postpferd, <i>n.</i> ... |
| Plate | Teller, <i>m.</i> | 76 | 131 |
| Platina | Platina, <i>f.</i> | 59 | Potatoe..... |
| Play (a game, | | | Kartoffel, <i>f.</i> |
| &c.) | Spiel, <i>n.</i> | 62 | 45 |
| Play (a theatre) | Schauspiel, <i>n.</i> ... | 55 | Pound..... |
| Pleasant | angenehm | 93 | Pfund, <i>n.</i> |
| Pleasure | Lust, <i>f.</i> | 60 | 70 |
| Pledge | Pfand, <i>n.</i> | 72 | Pour, to |
| Plough, to | pflügen | 77 | gießen..... |
| Plumb-line | Loth, <i>n.</i> | 61 | 37 |
| Po | Po, <i>m.</i> | 58 | Powder |
| Pocket-book | Taschenbuch, <i>n.</i> ... | 65 | Bulver, <i>n.</i> |
| Pocket-hand- | | | 63 |
| kerchief..... | Taschentuch, <i>n.</i> ... | 39 | Power |
| Poem | Gedicht, <i>n.</i> | 104 | Gewalt, <i>f.</i> |
| Point | Punkt, <i>m.</i> | 70 | 65 |
| Poison | Gift, <i>n.</i> | 61 | " |
| | | | Macht |
| | | | 74 |
| | | | Powerful |
| | | | mächtig..... |
| | | | 93 |
| | | | Practise |
| | | | pflügen..... |
| | | | 38 |
| | | | Praise |
| | | | Lob, <i>n.</i> |
| | | | 114 |
| | | | Praise, to |
| | | | preisen..... |
| | | | 42 |
| | | | Pray, to |
| | | | bitten |
| | | | 39 |
| | | | Pre-eminently.. |
| | | | vorzüglich..... |
| | | | 92 |
| | | | Prefect..... |
| | | | Präsident, <i>m.</i> ... |
| | | | 80 |
| | | | Prefer, to |
| | | | vorziehen..... |
| | | | 84 |
| | | | Press, to |
| | | | dringen |
| | | | 37 |
| | | | Pretty |
| | | | hübsch..... |
| | | | 79 |
| | | | Priesthood..... |
| | | | Priesterschaft, <i>f.</i> |
| | | | 57 |
| | | | Prince |
| | | | Fürst |
| | | | 75 |
| | | | " |
| | | | Prinz, <i>m.</i> |
| | | | 75 |
| | | | Principal |
| | | | Chef, <i>m.</i> |
| | | | 82 |
| | | | Principality.... |
| | | | Fürstenthum, <i>n.</i> |
| | | | 73 |
| | | | Principle |
| | | | Grundsatz, <i>m.</i> ... |
| | | | 114 |
| | | | Print, to |
| | | | drucken |
| | | | 52 |
| | | | Prison |
| | | | Gericht, <i>m.</i> |
| | | | 65 |
| | | | Privilege |
| | | | Vorrecht, <i>n.</i> |
| | | | 79 |
| | | | Prize (in a lot- |
| | | | tery) |
| | | | Loos, <i>n.</i> |
| | | | 37 |
| | | | Probably |
| | | | wahrscheinlich .. |
| | | | 120 |
| | | | Problem |
| | | | Problem, <i>n.</i> |
| | | | 81 |
| | | | Professor |
| | | | Professor, <i>m.</i> |
| | | | 80 |
| | | | Profit |
| | | | Gewinn, <i>m.</i> |
| | | | 109 |
| | | | " |
| | | | Nutzen, <i>m.</i> |
| | | | 115 |
| | | | Progress |
| | | | Fortschritte <i>m.pl.</i> |
| | | | 120 |
| | | | Promise |
| | | | Verprechen, <i>n.</i> ... |
| | | | 54 |
| | | | Promise, to |
| | | | versprechen |
| | | | 105 |
| | | | Pronoun |
| | | | Pronom, <i>n.</i> |
| | | | 80 |

| | PAGE | | PAGE | | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|---------|-------------------------|--------------------------|--------|
| Proper time..... | rechten Zeit..... | 37 | Really..... | wirklich..... | 120 |
| Property..... | Gut, <i>n</i> | 61 | Ream..... | Rieß, <i>n</i> | 61 |
| Proprietor..... | Besitzer, <i>m</i> | 88 | Reap, to..... | ernten..... | 107 |
| Prosper, to..... | gelingen..... | 42 | Reason..... | Vernunft, <i>f</i> | 126 |
| Prosperity..... | Glück, <i>n</i> | 128 | Receive, to..... | empfangen..... | 81 |
| Prosperous..... | wohlhaben..... | 117 | "..... | erhalten..... | 93 |
| Prune, to..... | befchneiden..... | 42 | Recollect, to.... | sich erinnern.... | 102 |
| Prussia..... | Preußen, <i>n</i> | 81 | Recommend, to. | empfehlen..... | 35 |
| Prussian, <i>adj</i> | preussisch..... | 111 | Recover, to | | |
| Prussian, <i>s</i> | Preuße, <i>m</i> | 74 | (from illness) | genesen..... | 39 |
| Psalm..... | Psalm, <i>m</i> | 80 | Reed..... | Rohr, <i>n</i> | 61 |
| Public..... | Publikum, <i>n</i> | 81 | Regiment..... | Regiment, <i>n</i> | 80 |
| " <i>adj</i> | öffentlich..... | 89 | Relate any- | | |
| Publishing | Verlagsgeschäft, | | thing, to..... | erzählen..... | 120 |
| business..... | <i>n</i> | 126 | Rely, to..... | sich verlassen.... | 95 |
| Pull, to..... | ziehen..... | 38 | Remain, to..... | bleiben..... | 42 |
| Punish, to..... | bestrafen..... | 106 | Remove, to..... | ziehen..... | 39 |
| Pupil..... | Schüler, <i>m</i> | 30 | Render, to..... | leisten..... | 125 |
| Purse..... | Börse, <i>f</i> | 37 | Renounce, to... | sich begeben.... | 125 |
| Pursue, to..... | verfolgen..... | 76 | Repair, to..... | ausbessern..... | 76 |
| Push, to..... | stoßen..... | 43 | Repast..... | Mahl, <i>n</i> | 61 |
| Put, to..... | setzen..... | 123 | Repeat, to..... | wiederholen.... | 106 |
| Put off, to..... | aufschieben.... | 126 | Report, to..... | berichten..... | 102 |
| Put on, to..... | auffetzen..... | 55 | Request, <i>s</i> | Bitte, <i>f</i> | 102 |
| Quail..... | Wachtel, <i>f</i> | 62 | Require, to..... | bedürfen..... | 105 |
| Quickly..... | schnell..... | 118 | Resemble..... | gleichen..... | 41 |
| Quiet..... | still, <i>adv</i> | 19 | Resin..... | Harz, <i>n</i> | 61 |
| Quite..... | ganz..... | 113 | Resound, to.... | erschallen..... | 37 |
| Quotient..... | Quotient, <i>m</i> | 80 | Respected..... | angesehen..... | 93 |
| Rack..... | Folter, <i>f</i> | 63 | Responsible.... | verantwortlich.. | 101 |
| Rage..... | Wuth, <i>f</i> | 60 | Rest..... | Ruhe, <i>f</i> | 57 |
| Rain..... | Regen, <i>m</i> | 115 | Return, to..... | zurückgeben.... | 90 |
| Rain, to..... | regnen..... | 30, 128 | Return any- | | |
| Ransack, to..... | plündern..... | 52 | thing, to..... | zurückschicken.. | 55 |
| Rather..... | lieber..... | 44, 119 | Reward..... | Lohn, <i>m</i> | 66 |
| Rattling..... | Geraffel, <i>n</i> | 57 | Rhine..... | Rhein, <i>m</i> | 58 |
| Raven..... | Rabe, <i>m</i> | 64 | Rhone..... | Rhone, <i>f</i> | 58 |
| Ravine..... | Schlucht, <i>f</i> | 60 | Ribbon..... | Band, <i>n</i> | 72, 78 |
| Ray..... | Strahl, <i>m</i> | 78 | Rice..... | Reis, <i>m</i> | 114 |
| Reach, to..... | reichen..... | 97 | Rich, <i>adj</i> | reich..... | 88 |
| "..... | erreichen.... | 100 | Riches..... | Reichthum, <i>m</i> ... | 65 |
| Read, to..... | lesen..... | 39 | Ride, to..... | reiten..... | 31, 41 |
| Reading..... | Lesen, <i>n</i> | 59 | Right..... | Recht <i>n</i> | 61 |
| Reading-book... | Lesebuch, <i>n</i> ... | 100 | "..... | recht, rechts. 115, 119 | |
| Ready (money). | baar, <i>adj</i> | 122 | Rightful..... | rechtmäßig.... | 90 |
| | | | Ripe..... | reif, <i>adj</i> | 22 |
| | | | Rise, to..... | steigen..... | 31, 42 |

| | PAGE | | PAGE |
|---|------------------------------|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Rise (the sun).. <i>aufgehen</i> | 43, 55 | Scattered, to be <i>stieben</i> | 38 |
| Rise out of bed,
to..... | <i>aufstehen</i> 54 | School..... | <i>Schule, f.</i>19, 75 |
| Rising..... | <i>aufgehend</i> 90 | Schoolboy..... | <i>Schulknabe, m.</i> ... 52 |
| River..... | <i>Fluß, m.</i> 19 | Science..... | <i>Wissenschaft, f.</i> ...114 |
| Road..... | <i>Weg, m.</i> 43 | Scotland..... | <i>Schottland, n.</i> ...117 |
| Roam through,
to..... | <i>durchzieh'en</i> 54 | Scream, to..... | <i>schreien</i> 42 |
| Roast, to..... | <i>braten</i> 43 | Sea..... | <i>Meer, n.</i> 60 |
| Rock..... | <i>Felsen, m.</i>123 | "..... | <i>See, f.</i> 60 |
| Roe..... | <i>Reh, n.</i> 61 | Seal..... | <i>Betschaft, n.</i> 64 |
| Roof..... | <i>Dach, n.</i>72, 76 | "..... | <i>Siegel, n.</i> 63 |
| Room..... | <i>Zimmer, n.</i> 52 | Sealing-wax..... | <i>Siegellack, n.</i> ...114 |
| Root..... | <i>Wurzel, f.</i> 62 | Seam..... | <i>Naht, f.</i> 74 |
| Rope..... | <i>Seil, n.</i> 55 | Secret..... | <i>Geheimniß, n.</i> ...127 |
| Rotten..... | <i>faul</i> 76 | " <i>adj.</i> | <i>verborgen</i>114 |
| Round, <i>adj.</i> | <i>rund</i> 95 | See, to..... | <i>sehen</i> 40 |
| Round about... <i>um</i> | 122 | Seed..... | <i>Saat, f.</i> 60 |
| Royal..... | <i>königlich</i> 52 | "..... | <i>Same, m.</i> 77 |
| Rub, to..... | <i>reiben</i> 42 | Seize, to..... | <i>greifen</i> 41 |
| Ruby..... | <i>Rubin, m.</i> 80 | Seldom..... | <i>selten</i>117 |
| Ruin..... | <i>Ruine, f.</i> 77 | Self..... | <i>selber, selbst</i> 97 |
| Rule..... | <i>Regel, f.</i> 62 | Sell, to..... | <i>verkaufen</i> 54 |
| Run, to..... | <i>laufen</i> 43 | Sempstress..... | <i>Nählerin, f.</i> 76 |
| "..... | <i>rennen</i> 45 | Send, to..... | <i>senden</i> 45 |
| Run away, to... <i>davonlaufen</i> | 55 | Sense..... | <i>Sinn, m.</i> 90 |
| Rush..... | <i>Schilf, n.</i> 61 | Servant..... | <i>Diener, m.</i> 93 |
| Rush, to..... | <i>sich stürzen</i>119 | " (man)... | <i>Bediene, m.</i> 44 |
| Russia..... | <i>Rußland, n.</i> 83 | Serve, to..... | <i>bienen</i>103 |
| Sacrifice..... | <i>Opfer, n.</i> 63 | Service..... | <i>Dienst, m.</i>125 |
| Saddle..... | <i>Sattel, m.</i> 71 | Serviceable.... | <i>nützlich</i> 93 |
| Sail..... | <i>Segel, n.</i> 63 | Set, to (the sun) <i>untergehen</i> — | 43, 55, 123 |
| Sail, to..... | <i>segeln</i> 31 | Set out, to..... | <i>abreißen</i> 54 |
| Sailor..... | <i>Matrose, m.</i> ...125 | Several..... | <i>mehrerer</i> 79 |
| Salt..... | <i>Salz, n.</i> 61 | Severe (illness,
&c.)..... | <i>schwer</i> 40 |
| Sand..... | <i>Sand, m.</i> 57 | Sex..... | <i>Geschlecht, n.</i> ... 73 |
| Satisfied..... | <i>zufrieden</i>96, 120 | Shake, to..... | <i>wanken</i> 97 |
| Satisfy, to..... | <i>befriedigen</i>107 | Shall..... | <i>so</i>104 |
| Sausage..... | <i>Wurst, f.</i> 74 | Shame..... | <i>Scham, f.</i> 60 |
| Save, to..... | <i>retten</i> 97 | Shape..... | <i>Gestalt, f.</i> 65 |
| Saving..... | <i>sparen</i>128 | Share..... | <i>Theil, n.</i> 62 |
| Savings..... | <i>Ersparniß, f.</i> 64 | Sharp..... | <i>scharf</i> 93 |
| Say (they)..... | <i>man sagt</i> 32 | Shear, to..... | <i>scheren</i> 38 |
| Say, to..... | <i>sagen</i> 30 | Sheep..... | <i>Schaf, n.</i> 69 |
| Scandinavian... <i>skandinavisch</i> | 77 | Sheet (of paper) | <i>Vogen, m.</i>109 |
| Scarcely..... | <i>faum</i>119 | Shell..... | <i>Muschel, f.</i> 62 |
| | | Shepherdess.... | <i>Hirtin, f.</i> 74 |

| | | PAGE | | | PAGE |
|------------------|------------------------------|--------|------------------------|----------------------------|----------|
| Shew, to..... | weisen..... | 42 | Sneak, to..... | schleichen..... | 41 |
| " | zeigen..... | 96 | Snort, to..... | schmauchen..... | 38 |
| Shield..... | Schild, <i>m.</i> | 66 | Snow | Schnee, <i>m.</i> | 131 |
| Shine, to..... | scheinen..... | 42 | So..... | so..... | 117 |
| Ship..... | Schiff, <i>n.</i> | 61 | Soldier..... | Soldat, <i>m.</i> | 75 |
| Ship, to..... | verladen..... | 106 | Sole, to..... | befohlen..... | 79 |
| Shirt..... | Hemd, <i>n.</i> | 78 | Solo..... | Solo, <i>n.</i> | 80 |
| Shoe..... | Schuh, <i>m.</i> | 70 | Solution..... | Auflösung, <i>f.</i> | 81 |
| Shoemaker..... | Schuhmacher, <i>m.</i> | 76 | Some..... | einige..... | 77 |
| Shoot, to..... | schießen..... | 38 | " | etwas..... | 114 |
| Shooting-season | Jagdzeit, <i>f.</i> | 130 | Somebody..... | Jedermann..... | 107 |
| Shop..... | Laden, <i>m.</i> | 70, 78 | Something | etwas..... | 107 |
| Shore..... | Ufer, <i>n.</i> | 125 | Song..... | Lied, <i>n.</i> | 72 |
| Short..... | kurz..... | 77 | Soon..... | bald..... | 116, 119 |
| Shoulder..... | Achsel, <i>f.</i> | 77 | Sophia..... | Sophie, <i>f.</i> | 82 |
| " | Schulter, <i>f.</i> | 63 | Sound, <i>s.</i> | Laut, <i>m.</i> | 70 |
| Shove, to..... | schieben..... | 38 | " (straits), <i>s.</i> | Eng, <i>m.</i> | 90 |
| Shovel..... | Schaufel, <i>f.</i> | 62 | " (in health) | gesund..... | 126 |
| Shrug, to..... | zucken..... | 77 | Sound, to..... | fliegen..... | 34 |
| Shut, to..... | schließen..... | 38 | Sow..... | Sau, <i>f.</i> | 60 |
| " | zumachen..... | 55 | Sow seed, to.... | säen..... | 107 |
| Sickle..... | Sichel, <i>f.</i> | 62 | Spain..... | Spanien, <i>n.</i> | 114 |
| Sieve..... | Sieb, <i>n.</i> | 62 | Spark..... | Funke, <i>m.</i> | 77 |
| Sight..... | Anblick, <i>m.</i> | 90 | Speak, to..... | sprechen..... | 36 |
| Sign-board..... | Schild, <i>n.</i> | 73 | Speak ill, to... | Wider reden..... | 107 |
| Silent, to be... | schweigen..... | 42 | Spectre | Geist, <i>n.</i> | 73 |
| Silver..... | Silber, <i>n.</i> | 64 | Speech..... | Rede, <i>f.</i> | 44 |
| Sing, to..... | singen..... | 35 | Spelling-book... | Bibel, <i>f.</i> | 62 |
| Singer..... | Sängerin, <i>f.</i> | 106 | Spend, to..... | ausgeben..... | 55 |
| Singing..... | Gesang, <i>m.</i> | 65 | Spin, to..... | spinnen..... | 36 |
| Sink, to..... | sinken..... | 31 | Spirit..... | Geist, <i>m.</i> | 71 |
| Sister..... | Schwester, <i>f.</i> | 41 | Spit, to..... | speien..... | 42 |
| Sit down, to... | sich setzen...40, | 123 | Splendidly..... | prachtvoll..... | 119 |
| Situation..... | Lage, <i>f.</i> | 84 | Splendour..... | Pracht, <i>f.</i> | 60 |
| " | Stelle, <i>f.</i> | 131 | Spoil, to..... | verderben..... | 36 |
| Skin..... | Hell, <i>n.</i> | 61 | Spoon..... | Löffel, <i>m.</i> | 16, 76 |
| " | Haut, <i>f.</i> | 73 | Sprain, to..... | verrenken..... | 128 |
| Sleep..... | Schlaf, <i>m.</i> | 122 | Spread, to..... | um sich greifen.. | 42 |
| Sleep, to..... | schlafen..... | 43 | Spring, to..... | springen..... | 31, 35 |
| Slice..... | Stückchen, <i>n.</i> | 40 | Spring forth, to | quellen..... | 38 |
| Slipper..... | Pantoffel, <i>m.</i> .. | 78 | Sprout, to..... | sprießen..... | 38 |
| Slit, to..... | schleifen..... | 41 | Spur..... | Sporn, <i>m.</i> | 78 |
| Slowly..... | langsam40, | 115 | Stag..... | Hirsch, <i>m.</i> | 44 |
| Small..... | klein..... | 76 | Stage..... | Bühne, <i>f.</i> | 106 |
| Smell..... | Geruch, <i>m.</i> | 99 | Stage-coach..... | Gilwagen, <i>m.</i> ... | 55 |
| Smell, to..... | riechen..... | 38 | Stairs..... | Treppe, <i>f.</i> | 131 |
| Smith..... | Schmied, <i>m.</i> | 39 | " , down... | hinunter..... | 116 |

| | PAGE |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Stairs, up | oben 116 |
| Stand, to..... | stehen 44 |
| Start, to..... | abfahren..... 55 |
| State..... | Staat, <i>m.</i> 78 |
| " | Stand, <i>m.</i> 65 |
| Statesmen | Staatsmänner... 78 |
| Statute..... | Statut, <i>n.</i> 80 |
| Stay, to..... | bleiben..... 42 |
| Steal, to..... | stehlen 36 |
| Steamboat | Dampfschiff, <i>n.</i> ... 112 |
| Steel..... | Stahl, <i>m.</i> 59 |
| Steel-pen..... | Stahlfeder, <i>f.</i> ... 115 |
| Step, to..... | treten..... 41 |
| Stick..... | Stoß, <i>m.</i> 42 |
| Still..... | still 45 |
| Sting..... | Stachel, <i>m.</i> 78 |
| Sting, to..... | stechen 36 |
| Stink, to.. .. | sinken 35 |
| Stone..... | Stein, <i>m.</i> ... 35, 69 |
| Stop, to (at a
place)..... | sich aufhalten... 123 |
| Store..... | Vorrath, <i>m.</i> 120 |
| Story | Geschichte, <i>f.</i> ... 102 |
| Stove..... | Ofen, <i>m.</i> 70 |
| Stranger..... | Fremde, <i>m.</i> 90 |
| Straw..... | Stroh, <i>n.</i> 62 |
| Strawberry..... | Erdbeere, <i>f.</i> 103 |
| Stream..... | Strom, <i>m.</i> 69 |
| Street..... | Straße, <i>f.</i> 88 |
| Strength..... | Kraft, <i>f.</i> 73 |
| Strict..... | streng 120 |
| Stride, to..... | schreiten 41 |
| Strike, to..... | schlagen 44 |
| Stroke, to..... | streichen 41 |
| Strong..... | dauerhaft..... 99 |
| " | stark..... 93 |
| Student..... | Student, <i>m.</i> 81 |
| Study..... | Studirstube, <i>f.</i> ... 116 |
| Study, to..... | studiren..... 31 |
| Stuff..... | Zeug, <i>n.</i> 62 |
| Subject..... | Unterricht, <i>m.</i> ... 78 |
| Sublime, <i>s.</i> | Erhabene, <i>n.</i> 90 |
| Succeed, to..... | gelingen.... 34, 120 |
| Successor..... | Nachfolger, <i>m.</i> ... 84 |
| Suck, to..... | saugen 38 |
| Sue, to..... | werben..... 36 |
| Suffer, to..... | leiden 41, 128 |

| | PAGE |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Sugar..... | Zucker, <i>m.</i> 109 |
| Sum (of money) | Geldsumme, <i>f.</i> ... 89 |
| Summer..... | Sommer, <i>m.</i> 52 |
| Sun..... | Sonne, <i>f.</i> 43 |
| Supper..... | Abendbrod, <i>n.</i> .. 40 |
| Suppliantly.... | flehentlich..... 117 |
| Surely.. .. | gewiß 120 |
| Surrounding
(country).... | Umgegend, <i>f.</i> ... 55 |
| Swallow, to..... | schlingen 34 |
| Swear, to..... | schwören..... 38 |
| Swede..... | Schwede, <i>m.</i> 77 |
| Sweet..... | süß..... 88 |
| Swell, to..... | schwellen..... 38 |
| Swim, to..... | schwimmen..... 36 |
| Swing, to..... | schwingen..... 35 |
| Switzerland.... | Schweiz, <i>f.</i> 83 |
| Sword..... | Schwert, <i>m.</i> 73 |
| Table | Tafel, <i>f.</i> 62 |
| " | Tisch, <i>f.</i> 76 <i>der</i> |
| Tailor..... | Schneider, <i>m.</i> ... 96 |
| Take, to..... | nehmen..... 36 |
| Take arms, &c.,
to | ergreifen..... 114 |
| Take a walk, to | spazieren gehen.. 121 |
| Take off, to..... | ausziehen..... 38, 55 |
| Tale | Mährchen, <i>n.</i> ... 84 |
| Talk, to..... | sprechen..... 104 |
| Tall..... | groß..... 22 |
| Taste (one of
the senses)... | Geschmack, <i>m.</i> ... 65 |
| Taste, to..... | kosten..... 96 |
| Tax..... | Steuer, <i>f.</i> 66 |
| Tea..... | Thee, <i>m.</i> 35 |
| Teach, to..... | unterrichten.... 106 |
| Teacher | Lehrer, <i>m.</i> ... 30, 69 |
| Tear..... | Thräne, <i>f.</i> 127 |
| Tear, to..... | reißen..... 41 |
| Tear out, to.... | ausreißen.... 41, 76 |
| Tedious..... | langweilig..... 93 |
| Tell, to..... | sagen..... 22, 30 |
| Tenfold..... | zehnfacher..... 109 |
| Tent..... | Zelt, <i>n.</i> 62 |
| Thames..... | Themse, <i>f.</i> 123 |
| Than | als 92 |
| Thank, to..... | danken..... 96 |

| | PAGE | | PAGE | | |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|----------|-------------------|----------------------------|---------|
| That, <i>conj.</i> | daß | 22 | Town..... | Stadt, <i>f.</i> | 19, 74 |
| Theatre..... | Theater, <i>n.</i> | 64 | Town-hall..... | Rathhaus, <i>n.</i> | 126 |
| Then..... | dann | 116 | Trace..... | Spur, <i>f.</i> | 60 |
| Theologian..... | Theolog, <i>m.</i> | 81 | Trades-people... | Handelsleute | 78 |
| There..... | da, dort | 115 | Train..... | Zug, <i>m.</i> | 104 |
| These..... | dies..... | 89, 102 | Translate, to... | übersetzen...54, 106 | |
| Thief..... | Dieb, <i>m.</i> | 49 | Translation..... | Uebersetzung, <i>f.</i> .. | 100 |
| Thing..... | Ding, <i>n.</i> | 60 | Transmit..... | übersenden | 125 |
| Think, to..... | denken | 45, 96 | Travel, to..... | reisen | 31, 117 |
| This..... | dies, dieser | 100 | Traveller..... | Reisende, <i>m.</i> | 131 |
| Thistle..... | Distel, <i>f.</i> | 62 | Travelling..... | Reisen, <i>n.</i> | 59 |
| Thither..... | hin | 115, 116 | Tread, to..... | treten | 40 |
| Thorn..... | Dorn, <i>m.</i> | 77 | Treasure..... | Schatz, <i>m.</i> | 88 |
| Thought..... | Gedanke, <i>m.</i> | 77 | Tree..... | Baum, <i>m.</i> | 75 |
| Thousand..... | tausend..... | 109 | Tributary..... | Nebenfluß, <i>m.</i> ... | 83 |
| Thrash, to..... | treischen..... | 37 | Troop..... | Schar, <i>f.</i> | 60 |
| Thread..... | Faden, <i>m.</i> | 70 | Troops..... | Truppen..... | 122 |
| Throne..... | Thron, <i>m.</i> ...70, 111 | | Trouble, to.... | bemühen..... | 97 |
| Through..... | durch— | | Truly..... | fürwahr..... | 120 |
| | 95, 101, 103, 122 | | " | wahrlich | 120 |
| Throw, to..... | werfen..... | 36 | Truth..... | Wahrheit, <i>f.</i> | 106 |
| " | schlagen | 124 | Try, to..... | prüfen..... | 128 |
| Thrush..... | Drossel, <i>f.</i> | 62 | " | versuchen | 96 |
| Thunder, to.... | donnern | 131 | Tune..... | Lied, <i>n.</i> | 42 |
| Tiber..... | Tiber, <i>f.</i> | 58 | Tunnel..... | Tunnel, <i>m.</i> | 122 |
| Tight..... | eng..... | 96 | Turk..... | Türke, <i>m.</i> | 74 |
| Till..... | bis | 126 | Turn, to..... | wenden..... | 45 |
| Time..... | Zeit, <i>f.</i> | 16 | Turn pale, to... | erblicken..... | 41 |
| Time, at the | | | Tutor..... | Hauslehrer, <i>m.</i> .. | 100 |
| same..... | zugleich..... | 117 | Two kinds..... | zweierlei | 109 |
| Times..... | mal | 109 | Twine, to | flechten | 37 |
| Tin..... | Zinn, <i>n.</i> | 62 | Tyrant..... | Thyran, <i>m.</i> | 97 |
| Tin-plate..... | Blech, <i>n.</i> | 60 | | | |
| Tired..... | müde..... | 22 | Umbrella | Regenschirm, <i>m.</i> | 128 |
| Title-page..... | Titelblatt, <i>n.</i> ... | 76 | Uncle..... | Onkel, <i>m.</i> | 100 |
| To..... | nach | 39, 121 | Uncommonly... | ungemein..... | 92 |
| To-day..... | heute..... | 95 | Under..... | unter | 123 |
| Together..... | sammt..... | 125 | Understand, to. | verstehen..... | 48 |
| Token..... | Zeichen, <i>n.</i> | 63 | Universally | allgemein | 106 |
| To-morrow..... | morgen48, 117 | | University..... | Universität, <i>f.</i> ... | 81 |
| To-morrow, | | | Unpack, to..... | auspacken..... | 55 |
| after | übermorgen..... | 117 | Unsettled | unbeständig..... | 126 |
| Too..... | zu | 97 | Unwell..... | unwohl..... | 19 |
| Top..... | Spitze, <i>f.</i> | 123 | Up..... | herauf | 116 |
| Torch..... | Fackel, <i>f.</i> | 62 | Upon..... | auf...96, 101, 123 | |
| Torment..... | Pein, <i>f.</i> | 60 | Upon oath..... | eidlich | 117 |
| " | Qual, <i>f.</i> | 60 | Upstairs... .. | oben..... | 116 |

| | PAGE | | PAGE |
|--------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------|
| Us..... | uns..... 37 | Water, to..... | begießen..... 54 |
| Usage .. | Gebrauch, <i>m</i> 65 | Wave, to ... | schwenken..... 76 |
| Use, to | gebrauchen..... 48 | Wax..... | Wachs, <i>n</i> 39 |
| Use ill, to..... | mißhandeln..... 53 | Wear, to..... | tragen..... 90 |
| Usual..... | gewöhnlich..... 131 | Weather..... | Wetter, <i>n</i> 88 |
| Usurper..... | Usurpator, <i>m</i> ... 115 | Weave, to..... | weben..... 38 |
| Vain, in..... | umsonst..... 117 | Week..... | Woche, <i>f</i> 93 |
| " | vergebens..... 117 | Weekly..... | wöchentlich..... 79 |
| Valley | Thal, <i>n</i> 73 | Weigh, to, <i>in-</i> | |
| Vanish, to..... | schwinden..... 35 | trans.... | wiegen..... 38 |
| Various | verschiedene..... 81 | Weigh, to, | |
| Vein | Ader, <i>f</i> 63 | trans..... | wägen..... 38 |
| Venture, to.... | wagen..... 48 | Well | gut, <i>adv</i> 119 |
| Verb..... | Verb, <i>n</i> 80 | " | wohl..... 19 |
| Very | gar, sehr..... 119 | Wellbeing..... | Wohl, <i>n</i> 62 |
| Vex, to | verdrießen..... 38 | Wether (sheep). .. | Sammel, <i>m</i> 70 |
| Vice | Last, <i>n</i> 63 | What | was..... 30 |
| Vienna..... | Wien, <i>n</i> 84 | Wheel..... | Rad, <i>n</i> 72 |
| Village..... | Dorf, <i>n</i> 72, 76 | When..... | wann..... 19, 116 |
| Violently..... | heftig..... 119 | " | wenn, <i>conj</i> 55 |
| Visit, to..... | besuchen..... 49 | Whence | woher..... 116 |
| Voice | Stimme, <i>f</i> 106 | Where..... | wo..... 19 |
| Volume..... | Band, <i>m</i> 65 | Whereon..... | woran..... 46 |
| Vote, to... .. | stimmen..... 95 | While..... | indem..... 131 |
| Wages..... | Lohn, <i>n</i> 79 | Whistle | pfeifen..... 41 |
| Wagoners. | Fuhrleute, <i>m</i> 78 | Whither..... | wohin..... 116 |
| Wait, to..... | warten..... 30 | Whitsuntide.... | Pfingsten, <i>pl</i> ... 123 |
| Wait for, to.... | abwarten..... 93 | Who..... | wer..... 103, 104 |
| Waiter..... | Kellner, <i>m</i> 46 | Whole..... | ganz..... 113 |
| Walk | Spaziergang, <i>m</i> . 90 | Whom | den..... 102 |
| Walk, to..... | gehen..... 43 | " | wen..... 103 |
| " | spazieren..... 76 | Whom, to | wem..... 89 |
| Wall | Mauer, <i>f</i> 69 | Why | warum..... 30, 48 |
| " | Wand, <i>f</i> 74 | Wick | Docht, <i>m</i> 70 |
| Want | Mangel, <i>m</i> 42 | Wife | Weib, <i>n</i> 73 |
| Want, to..... | brauchen..... 76 | Wilderness..... | Widniss, <i>f</i> 64 |
| Wanting (to be) .. | fehlen..... 111 | Will..... | Wille, <i>m</i> 77 |
| War | Krieg, <i>m</i> 122 | William..... | Wilhelm, <i>m</i> 111 |
| Warehouse | Niederlage, <i>f</i> ... 128 | Willingly | gern..... 119 |
| Warm | warm..... 22 | Win, to..... | gewinnen..... 36 |
| Warn | aufmerksam | Wind | Wind, <i>m</i> 119 |
| | machen..... 130 | Wind, to..... | winden..... 35 |
| Wash, to..... | waschen..... 44 | Wind one's self, | |
| Watch | Uhr, <i>f</i> 69 | to..... | sich schlängeln... 123 |
| Water | Wasser, <i>n</i> 64 | Window..... | Fenster, <i>n</i> 55 |
| | | Wine | Wein, <i>m</i> 35 |
| | | Wine-press..... | Kelter, <i>f</i> 63 |

| | PAGE | | PAGE | | |
|------------------------|------------------------------|--------------|--------------------------------|-------------------------|--------|
| Wisdom. | Weisheit, <i>f</i> | 58 | Wring, to ringen..... | 34 | |
| Wise..... | weise..... | 88 | Write, to schreiben..... | 42 | |
| Wish..... | Wunsch, <i>m</i> | 128 | Writing..... | Schrift, <i>f</i> | 60 |
| Wish, to..... | wünschen..... | 30 | Wrong, <i>adv</i> | falsch..... | 77 |
| With..... | mit..... | 96, 101, 103 | " , <i>s</i> | Unrecht, <i>n</i> | 107 |
| Within..... | innen..... | 115, 125 | | | |
| Without..... | außen..... | 115 | Yard..... | Elle, <i>f</i> | 109 |
| " | ohne..... | 126 | Yarn..... | Garn, <i>n</i> | 61 |
| Woe..... | Weh, <i>n</i> | 62 | Year..... | Jahr, <i>n</i> | 111 |
| Wolf..... | Wolf, <i>m</i> | 31 | Yes..... | ja..... | 120 |
| Woman..... | Frau, <i>f</i> | 59 | " | ja wohl..... | 120 |
| " | Frauenzimmer, <i>n</i> | 58 | Yesterday | gestern..... | 40 |
| Wonder..... | Wunder, <i>n</i> | 64 | " , before..... | vorgestern | 117 |
| Wood..... | Holz, <i>n</i> | 104 | Yet..... | noch..... | 116 |
| Wood (a forest). | Wald, <i>m</i> | 127 | Yield..... | weichen..... | 41 |
| Word..... | Wort, <i>n</i> | 73, 78 | Yoke..... | Sech, <i>n</i> | 61 |
| Work..... | Werk, <i>n</i> | 52 | Yonder..... | dort..... | 115 |
| Work, to..... | arbeiten..... | 31 | You..... | ihr..... | 94 |
| Worker..... | Arbeiter, <i>m</i> | 106 | Young..... | jung..... | 87 |
| Workpeople..... | Arbeitsleute | 78 | Your..... | Ihr | 16, 98 |
| World..... | Welt, <i>f</i> | 45 | Youth..... | Jugend, <i>f</i> | 58 |
| Worm..... | Wurm, <i>m</i> | 39, 71 | | | |
| Wound, to..... | verwunden | 97 | Zero..... | Null, <i>f</i> | 60 |
| Wreck..... | Bruch, <i>n</i> | 62 | Zinc..... | Zink, <i>m</i> | 59 |

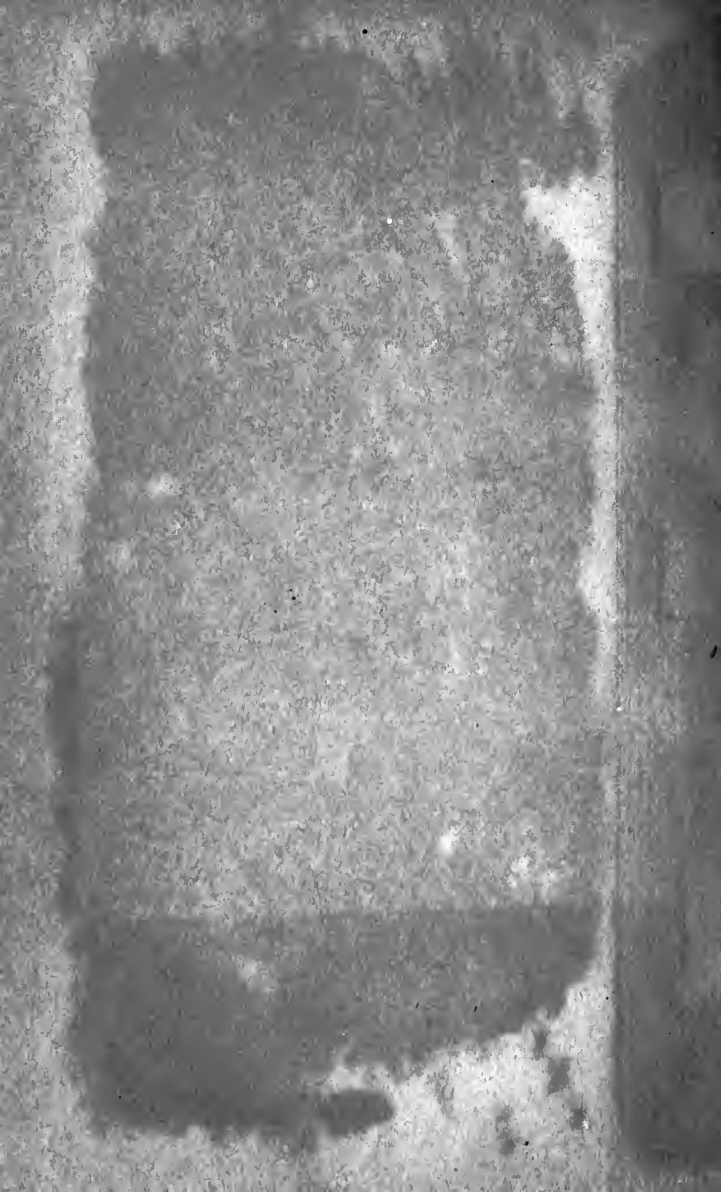
THE END.

denken an die Sache
schreiben an
adressieren an
sich wenden an *thus*

==
hoffen auf *accus.*
warten auf *wait for*
sich verlassen auf *depend on*
rechnen auf *count on*

==
lachen - *über*
sprechen -
spotten *thus*
sich freuen

sich ärgern *über*
schützen *dativ* *vor* *protect*
behüten *guard*
bewahren *vor* *preserve*
es schützt *vor* *dem* *Ke*



YA. 04389

924158

THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

on

